RUANGLAT GRAMMAR

Khatnic Phuakna Hymei

(Classes XI and XII)

RUANGMEI LITERATURE SOCIETY

Approved as a Ruanglat textbook of Classes XI and XII by the Council of Higher Secondary Education, Manipur vide No. 3(I)/74/2011-HSC dated 18-03-2014

RUANGLAT GRAMMAR

Khatnic
Phuakna Hymei

(Classes XI and XII)

Ragongning Gangmei

RUANGMEI LITERATURE SOCIETY

Printed with the financial Aassistance of Tribal Research Institute, Government of Manipur for the year 2013-2014

Ruanglat Grammar Khatnic Phuakna Hymei

for Classes XI and XII

Published by:

RUANGMEI LITERATURE SOCIETY

First Print - 2014

Copies - 2000 copies

Price - Rs. 100/-

Printed at BCPW, 85-Super Market, Lamphelpat, Imphal - 795 004

LATMUN

Class XI khatnic XII curriculum hei kahunungc lwn khouteirui kalaihmei nai the. Mihei nchamnac kapumc kahak kahak rui thay khang, aheih khang karamh mak gethei nchamloumei na rui thu nuhmak ge twmei phaydyng khou kasiamhloumei curriculum the. Mi curriculum bangc khouhei latrik kanei ncham pwni.

Ruangmei Chingkhiuh Lulat

- Mi khou hei pary dangv, luchyam, drama, pahmei, hymei - lulat ramgai tii pwni.

Ruanglat Grammar Khatnic Phuakna Hymei

- Mi hei Ruanglat khwan, lwnliak, kathiak kalwan, kachav, Phuakna Hymei guay lam khou ntwnmei lwan thay khang e.

Mi curriculum rui kahawmei hei dinhmei khatnic nchamnac nunc kariu lana kathai kariangmei tei e. Pary dangv khat luchyam khat pac lana karamgai laatowmei, kalungc khou luangc bammei duiriang tei how ngammei, thanvmei daw ngammei miguay tatei na hamh e kahawmei hei. Ariumei kalam kalwan guay kalangv khakna hypat ngammei, lungning khou laatowmei, katiuloumei, lunghthaumei kalwn kahiak nthanna ndauhpat ngammei tei nic e kahaw bammei hei. Mi Ruangmei curriculum hei rui nchamnac nunc lungning kaluanthaumei, thay nii how niimei kagwan khat thu tihianku pwng e twmei hei lwmgay e.

Ruanglat Grammar hei Council of Higher Secondary Education, Manipur rui phungcpatmei, **'Matamgi Manipuri Grammar Amasung Composition'** zamh framework khou base swna Ruanglat lev chaanahmei lwan khou Pouh Ragongning Gangmei rui hypat dat tuang e. Mi grammar hei Council of Higher Secondary Education, Manipur rui laengvna review workshop akhat bamna zauc nchamc kan e. Kaphianhmei khoutei thaymei, aheihmei azuh kazauh kan e. Workshop khoutei hymei kapumc kahak kazauhna kamei rui hyloumei tei kasiamhpat-gut kan e, hy han dat re, kalwan ti-nchumhlou e. Review workshop khoutei Council of Higher Secondary Education, Manipur (COHSEM) biak thangcrui Shri Sarangajit Khundrakpam, Secretary, Shri Babudhon Singh, Joint Secretary khatnic Smt.Kh.Gunabati Devi, Deputy Secretary(Academic-I) kazauhlou kan e khatnic Language Expert swna C.P.Lungkubon, Pouh Thaikhui Rongmei khatnic

Dr.Soihiamlung Dangmei kaniw kazauhlou kan e. Mi khangtei Ruangmei Literature Society rui kaniw kapwmna ta thuanckumei ndauh e.

Phungcpat bammei latrik hei rui nchamnac nunc khang zayloumei mairam sw pw ethei hymei thiu ta thuanckulou pw o. Reymei swpui zaeng rui kahawmei, ningmei guangtangh makmei khatnic gaatmei azuh nai bam kho nic nuh e. Mi kumhmei guay tei aniw khou saaguanglou pw o. Mi tei rui katangv khou sw nthuihpat dat khang zayloumei sw pwni e.

(Dr. Thuanreilung Phaomei)
Secretary
Ruangmei Literature Society

HYMEI LATKAENG

Mi **Ruanglat Grammar** (latriak) hei Council of Higher Secondary Education, Manipur rui phungcpatmei ***Matamgi Manipuri Grammar Amasung Composition*** khatnic National Curriculum Framework 2005 khou base swna Ruanglat lev chaanah khang taancpat tuang e.

Kalwnlung tho grammar guay hei kathiak nchamc raphrapna hy bam khwan e. Tihkic Ruanglat Grammar khouhei tho Ruanglat hei lat baihmei guay lev nchamcmei lwan guay tei nchamcna hylou the, nchamc makmei lwan guay tei nchamc makna hylou the. Kumna parts of speech, number, tense khatnic aspect lwnlung khatnic sinswpui lwan guay khou baihmei grammar lwnlung lev baic maihmei ariu pwni e.

Kadai swna linguistic lwan - **Reymei Latlangv** khatnic **Kaneimei Latlangv** khou hei Ruanglat lev chaanah khang hy e. Mi khouhei puatc kathanc khatnic terminology kathanc kazauh e. Lat baihmei lev nchamc makmei lwan nai geic e. Kalam thu Ruanglat hei khwangwan khatnic nwkwang khwan naipui zaengrui lat baihmei lev nchamc nuh makmei lwan peyna nai e. English lat khou tone maek ge, prenasalized sound nic maek ge, kumtina English alphabet khou tone symbol maek ge, prenasalized sound symbol nic maek ge. Kumna English alphabet hei Ruanglat hy khang laagutmei khou kunghmei peyna nai e - kasiamhpat gut khang kage nai e. Kumkhwansinic mbaanv khou Ruanglat kumcna tone geihmei, nwkwang khwan naimei lat azuh nai e. Mi lat guay hei hy khang English alphabet piumei nic azuh nai e. Mi lat guay saamei zaat nunc rui kaniw lat khou tone khatnic prenasalized sound hei akumhna hy cho twmei tei kathai ariu e. Khatnic universal swmei linguistic concept khou 'symbol hei aniw rui piu niimei nguihmei lwan khou kasiamhpat gutna piu nuh e' twmei hei nai e. Saa kanmei zaat nunc zamh practice khatnic linguistic concept lwan khouhei ngangvlouna Ruanglat khou tone hiak khang *v c h* ta laagutlou e, falling tone khou *u, i* phaan *w, y* hy khang laagutlou e khatnic prenasalized sound hy khang *m n ng* hiak guay hei kapahlou e.

Ruanglat khou *'tuang' 'zamh'* kanei hei nai e. Kabah khatna de. Local variation e. Mi Ruanglat Grammar khou hei *'tuang' 'zamh'* hei kaneimei piulou e *'tuang'* hei puatc swna naimei ta khatnic *'zamh'* hei abstract form khou naimei ta thaymei khou piu e.

Mi Ruanglat Grammar khouhei kadai swmei akhat tho Composition hei e. Mi khouhei *pacna thaymei, note kasiamhmei, essay hymei, tatdyn hymei* mikumhmei guay hei kazauh e. Mihei nchamnac nunc karaa raana hy chadaa lana pahmei, hymei, kakhanhmei khou nyngtyng, lungning sw-ntuk hian khang kadai swmei e.

Aseicdou nchamnac nunc hei university thaek khou lat lam khou mincna kathai pwkhou kadow chaa hian khang rui mi latrik khouhei linguistic terminology guay tei kalaih makna piulou e. Kumna linguistic portion khouhei mincna kathailou ethei mi kumhmei nchamnac tei lat baihmei guay lam nic howpat thaymei hian pwni e twmei lwmgay e.

Dinhmei nunc khou zaenghuay niimei thu mi latrik khou hyloumei kalam guay luaimei sik **Kathaidwan** nai e. Miguay hei continuous evaluation sw khang kasiamhlou tuang e. Mihei dinhmei nunc rui katupna khatnic lunghgutna kathai nduanghlou ethei nchamnac nunc Ruanglat lam khou nthuihna thay pwni e twmei lwmgay e.

Nkhamh liangmei khou, Dr.Thuanreilung Phaomei rui Composition chapter khou hy nkhavlou e. Mi khangtei kata kanganv maekna thuanckumei ndauh e.

Ragongning Gangmei

KAZAUHMEI
(Contents)

Kalam		*Kasap*
Latmun	-	i
Hymei Latkaeng	-	ii
Kazauhmei (Contents)	-	v

Part I
LAT KHATNIC KHWAN
(Language and Sound)

1.0	LAT		
	1.1.0 Lat (Language)	-	1
	1.2.0 Linguistics	-	2
	1.3.0 Phonology	-	2
	1.4.0 Phonetics	-	2
	1.5.0 Grammar	-	3
2.0	**KHWANPATMEI LWAN** (Sound Production)	-	4
	2.1.0 Latsaamei Naatnu (Speech Organs)	-	4
3.0	**RUANGLAT KHWANLWAN KATHAIMEI**(Ruangmei Phonology)	-	6
	3.1.0 Kabiswmei Khwan (Basic Elements of Ruangmei Sound)	-	6
	3.2.0 Khwandiu (Phoneme)	-	8
	3.3.0 Vowels	-	9
	3.4.0 Consonants	-	26
	3.4.1 Consonant Matatpatmei (Establishment of Consonants)	-	26
	3.5.0 Consonant Lwn Dinhmei (Description of Consonants)	-	33
	3.6.0 Nwkwang Khwan (Prenasalized Sound)	-	43
	3.7.0 Khwanlangv (Syllable)	-	47
	3.8.0 Khwangwan (Tone)	-	50
4.0	**Kahiak Laathaumei** (Adoption of Alphabet)	-	59
5.0	**Hymei Lwan** (Writing System)	-	63

Part II

(Grammar)

		LATRIAK
6.0	**LATKAENG KATHAIMEI** (Morphology)	- 76
	6.1.0 NOUN KIK (Noun Categories)	- 77
	6.1.1 Kuidui (Gender)	- 77
	6.1.2 Kasing Lwan (Number)	- 78
	6.1.3 Meic (Person)	- 84
	6.1.4 Case	- 85
	6.2.0 VERB KIK (Verbal Categories)	- 92
	6.2.1 Ganv (Tense)	- 92
	6.2.2 Aspect	- 94
	6.2.3 Kwm (Mood)	- 97
	6.3.0 LATSAV NAATNU (Word Class - Parts of Speech)	- 99
	6.3.1 Noun	- 100
	6.3.2 Pronoun	- 100
	6.3.3 Adjective	- 101
	6.3.4 Verb	- 102
	6.3.5 Adverb	- 102
	6.3.6 Postposition	- 103
	6.3.7 Conjunction	- 104
	6.3.8 Interjection	- 104
7.0	**LATSAV NAATNU KIK** (Kinds of Parts of Speech)	- 106
8.0	**LATKAENG DUANHMEI** (Word Formation)	- 124
9.0	**LATRIAN KATHAIMEI** (Syntax)	- 129
	9.1.0 Word Order	- 129
	9.2.0 Latchuam (Phrase)	- 131
	9.3.0 Latriannac (Clause)	- 133
	9.4.0 Latrian (Sentence)	- 134
10.0	**KACHUC BAMMEI LATRIAN ZAAT** (Functional Types of Sentence)	- 138
11.0	**KIDAAMEI GAT** (Degree of Comparison)	- 141
12.0	**KABAH** (Semantic)	- 144
13.0	**SYNONYM, ANTONYM khatnic HOMONYM**	- 150
14.0	**LATMI**	- 156
15.0	**LATPAA** (Pair of Word)	- 159

16.0 NYNGTYNG LATCHAP (Proverbs and Sayings) - 167
17.0 LATTHIAP (Idioms) - 176

PART III

24.0 CHARUANGC LATRIAK (Social Grammar) - 183

Part IV

PHUAKNA HYMEI

(Composition)

18.0 Pacna Thaymei (Comprehension) - 193
19.0 Note Kasiamhmei (Note Making) - 202
20.0 Kalingmei Lwn Dinhmei (Factual Description) - 208
21.0 Tatdyn Hymei (Letter Writing) - 214
22.0 Essay Hymei - 236
23.0 Chamvche, magazine khang hymei
(Writing for Newspaper, magazine) - 251

Part I
LAT KHATNIC KHWAN
(Language and Sound)

1.0 LAT
(Language)

1.1.0 LAT (Language)

Maansei hei lat saamei khouringh zaat akhat re. Lat kazauh makna maanseina daicthau nuhmak ge. Khouringh hei maanseina lev nchamc de tihkic kachuc nuhmei, hykey nuhmei kaniw lat maek ge. Kumtina khouringh guay hei daicthau khithkhit ku mak ge. Maansei thu kalat nai e kumtina daicthau khithkhit ku bam tuang e. Maansei tuang charuangc khatnic lunghlwan daicthau khithkhit kuna bam e. Maansei rui lat paan khourui khat lev khat lung-lat saa ndauhpat re, thay kari e khatnic dymdwan e. Latrik nyngtyng, science, technology, chamv, lulat kaguayna hei lat paan rui tithay pat re, khatnic ncham e, khatnic mi guay hei rui maansei saengcthau daicthau khang pumtan sw e.

Maansei rui lungning khou naimei nyngtyng, kahawmei, laaniimei, lazihmei, nzianmei, karaengmei, saapat re. Mihei kathiak kanei nai e - mwang rui saamei lat khatnic hymei lat twmei hei e. Mi kanei kak khouhei saamei lat rui hymei lat khangsuangc kadai sw e. Mi lam hei asaekc nai e:

(1) Kandihramc khou maansei rui lat tihei sinswna saamei rui sinswna hymei khang-suangc geic hian e. Lat tihei sinswna saaguaangmei thu tingsaengc the tihkic hymei hei thu nkhamhna naiguang tuang e.

(2) Maansei akhat hei puancloumei tangv asaanh makna lat hei saa kahouh the.

(3) *Saamei lat* hei *hymei lat* khangsuangc sinsw hian e. Kumna *saamei lat* hei *hymei lat* khangsuangc kabi sw e.

(4) Hymei lat hei thu saabammei lat khwan tatei maengh hamhethei kahiak rui lynna hykeyloumei lat tatei e.

(5) Tihkic, lat hykey lana nchammei rui lat tihei tidaicthau, tigaythau ngam e.

(6) Alauc nunc khang thaygay liangmei lat thu puilat hei the.

(7) Puilat hei chapriak patpui bamv khatnic ryloupui bamv e. Puilat nai saanv zaatctei naibam pwni, puilat amaankeypui nungc tei mi zaatc tei nic amaankey the.

1.2.0 LINGUISTICS

Linguistics tabui ta cho? Lat tihei kathiak kalwan naina kathai kariangmei lwan tihei Linguistics twna thay e. Lat Kathaimei Lwan (Linguitics) hei social science pangc khou branch akhat re. Mi lungc khoutei Phonetics khatnic Phonology twmei khwan kathaimei lwan nai e.

1.3.0 PHONETICS

Phonetics tabui ta cho? Lat akhat zamh kabah naimei khwan hei akumhna saapat bo twmei latsaamei naatnu lev kariang naina kathaimei lwan tatei Phonetics twna thay e. Lat akhat khwan akumhna pat bo, rahpat bo, chupat bo khatnic kabiswna khwan hei tabui twnteirui kahouhna pat cho, tabui naatnu rui tipat cho twmei khwanpatbamv lev latsav khwan (speech sound) kariang naina nsunhna kathaimei lwan guay tihei lat akhat zamh **Phonetics** twna thay e.

1.4.0 PHONOLOGY

Lat hei kabah naimei khwan e. Mi kumhmei khwan tei duanc kariu lana latkaeng kasiamh e. Latkaeng azuh duanc kariu lana latrian kasiamh e. Khwan tihei nsunhna baibakkey pwkhou kabah tipat ngammei khwandiu mphang e. Mihei kumcna Lat akhat zamh Khwan, khwandiw, khwanlangv, latsaamei naatnu guay nsunhna kathai lana duancloumei Khwan Lwan ta Phonology kaw e.

Lat kathaithau pwkhou maansei rui saapat bammei latsav khwan tei diangcna kathai e. Mi tatei English khou *Speech Event* twna thay e. Saapat bammei latsav tei chy khourui thauna ruak nganv khou naimei naatnu kiak kiak rui taanhmei guay thei laypui tuang e. Rey liangmei khou, saa nipui mei py khoutei saapat nimei lat tei nay rey the. Mitei saapat khang zeiriang lau launa guay rui taanvsw e. Zeirjang lau launa guay tei rui ruak khourui chy nganv khou naimei latsav naatnu guay tatei kahi e. Mithei tei layna latsaa khou kazauhmei naatnu guay tei taanv taancthauna khwan tipat re khatnic mitei rui mpaeng khou mpwan khoutei pakpat re khatnic mitei rui *sound wave* (khwan muat) tipat re. Tipat bammei khwan muat heirui nking bammei nukuanc khou guangna kahi e. Kumna saabampui mei rui saaniimei lat tei guangna nukuanc khou kahi tina chubampui mei tei rui thaybam tuang e. Mihei kumcna saabammei lev chubammei hei khwan (sound) khourui lat tei thay alamv e. Kumna saabammei lev chubammei kanei tei mi lat lwan, lat thiak guay tei thay nchamc e.

Kumna Phonetics lwan theilayna Ruangmei lat zamh khwan, khwandiu, khwan-langv, latsaamei naatnu lam guay nsunhna kathai lana duancloumei lwan tihei **Ruangmei Phonology** twna thay e.

1.5 GRAMMAR

Grammar tabui ta cho? Grammar hei latriak ta e. Grammar hei lat zamh thiak-riak guay tei duanc kaduai lana kasiamhpat tuang e. Kumna **lat khat zamh grammar twmei hei - aseicdou kaanc khou *saa bammei lat* tei kathai kariang lana mi khouteirui laatowmei lat zamh thiak-riak guay tei the.** Kumna mi kumhmei grammar khoutei kabangc khou hylou bammei **kathai lwan** guay hei nai pwni.

(1) **Phonology** - Khwan khatnic khwanhiak guay kathaimei lwan;

(2) **Morphology** - Latkaeng kathaimei lwan;

(3) **Syntax** - Latrian kathaimei lwan;

(4) **Semantics** - Kabah kathaimei lwan.

Lat zamh grammar thay ethei lat tatei puilat swna saa bammei nunc tei rui lat zamh thiak-riak guay tei mincna thay khourui lat tei piu chuyna piu ngam e, khatnic lat baihmei saamei nunc rui mi lat tei ncham lana thay khang karamc pwkhou gaengmei tei laatow e.

Lat ncham bammei nunc rui lat tei charuangc khou akumhna piu tuang cho twmei thay khang kage nai e. Heic zaengrui ncham khang hypatloumei grammar khou hei socio-linguistics lev kage naimei latbamv azuh nic tikazauhlou khang kage naibam e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Maansei kalwnlung khourui kalaihna daicthau khithkhit ku bammei hei tabui zaeng cho ?
2. Maansei lev khouringh khiannahmei tabui tei cho?
3. Lat paan khourui guangmei nyngtyng guang e. Kalam dincna saa o.
4. Kakhanhmei lungning, mang manvmei, kahawmei guay hei tabui rui saa ndauhpat ngam cho?
5. Lat hei kazaat kanei nai e. Tabuibui tei cho?
6. Linguistic tabui ta cho?
7. Phonetics tabui ta cho?
8. Ruangmei Phonology tabui ta cho?
9. Grammar tabui ta cho?
10. Grammar khou kage naimei lwan asaekc nai e. Tabubui tei cho?

2.0 KHWAN PATMEI LWAN

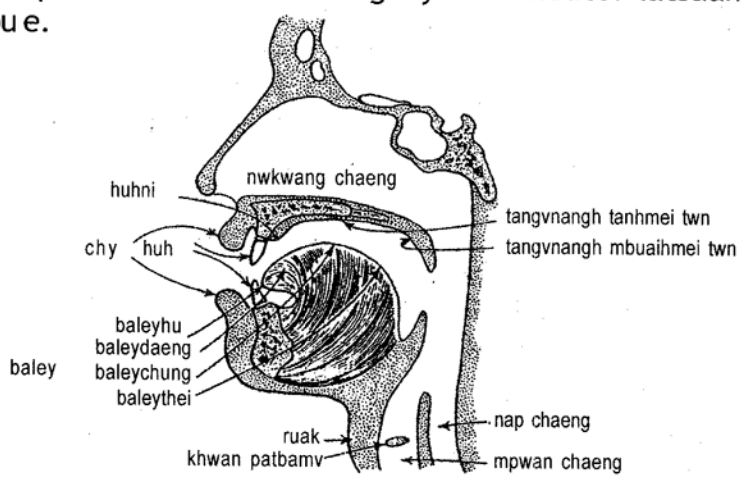
(Sound Production)

Lat kathaithau pwkhou maansei rui saapat bammei latsav khwan tei diangcna kathai e. Mi tatei English khou *Speech Event* twna thay e. Saapat bammei latsav tei chy khourui thauna ruak nganv khou naimei naatnu kiak kiak rui taanhmei guay thei laypui tuang e. Rey liangmei khou, saa nipui mei py khoutei saapat nimei lat tei nay rey the. Mitei saapat khang zeiriang lau launa guay rui taanvsw e. Zeiriang lau launa guay tei rui ruak khourui chy nganv khou naimei latsav naatnu guay ta tei kahi e. Mithei tei layna latsaa khou kazauhmei naatnu guay tei taanv taancthauna khwan tipat re khatnic mitei rui mpaeng khou mpwan khoutei pakpat re khatnic mitei rui *sound wave* (khwan muat) tipat re. Tipat bammei khwan muat heirui nking bammei nukuanc khou guangna kahi e. Kumna saabampui mei rui saaniimei lat tei guangna nukuanc khou kahi tina chubampui mei tei rui thaybam tuang e. Mihei kumcna saabammei lev chubammei hei khwan (sound) khourui lat tei thay alamv e. Kumna saabammei lev chubammei kanei tei mi lat lwan, lat thiak guay tei thay nchamc e.

Lat hei khwankiak guay kariuna saapat re. Mi khwankiak guay hei akumhna saapat tuang cho twmei thay nuh khang latsaamei naatnu guay kalwn khatnic kathouc guay thaymei kage nai e.

2.1.0 LATSAAMEI NAATNU GUAY (Speech Organs)

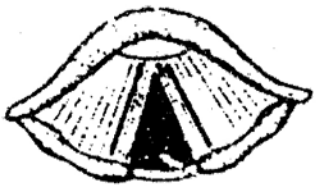
Latsaamei naatnu guay hei kadaiswna taektw tumei, zangvmei khatnic thiulaa laa khou piu e. Heickumna mi guay ruc khoutei latsaamei taanv nic haap nkuanlou e.



Latsaamei Naatnu

Meicthiu laa pwkhou phuan khourui patmei mpwan tei mpwanchaeng khou pat lana mwang biak tho hamhethei nwkwang biak tho, hamhethei kaneimei khou tatna mpaeng thangc pat re. Kumna phuan khourui patmei mpwan hei sinsw lana khwan-guay hei tipat tuang e. Mpwan hei patmei ganv khou thinghmei, khamvmei, mpatmei azuh tii lana latsaamei naatnu guay ta kathouc kathouc khou piu lana lat zamh khwan guay tipat re.

Mpwanchaeng lwan khou ruak twn khwan patpui bamv nai e. Mi khoutei mpumei laancpat laancgut nuhmei **Khwanpat Bamv** *(vocal cord)* twna kawmei kanei nai e, mi tei lev phuan khourui patmei mpwan lev ariu e. Vocal cord kanei tei rui khwanpatbamv khou naimei phoumei glottis mwang tei kagumc lana thiulaa thingc e, khatnic taleina laancpat pwkhou mpwan tei vocal cord kanei ta tei tikadunhmei lev kazauhna mpwan chaeng khoutei patruan pat re. Vocal cord kanei tei kadunhna kalung pwkhou khwan pat re. *Vocal Cord* kanei tei kadaeng kanei tei haana laanclou pwkhou mpwan tei khamvmei maekna nzut phuthphut pat re. Mi ganv khoutei *Vocal Cord* tei kalung mak ge. Kumtina mi khoutei khwan pat mak ge.



Khwan patbamv

Phuan khourui patmei mpwan tei tangnangh khou mbuaihmei tei kalung timak gethei mwang biak thu asaekc nwkwang biak thu asaekc pat re. Tangvnangh khou mbuaihmei tei nthei biak tho tiduaplou tithei nwkwang chaeng khamv e, kakhaeng nkauh kuna tangvnangh khou mbuaihmei tei lev tikariu tithei huh biak thu tipat mak ge, mpwan tei nwkwang biak tho pat re. Chy kanei kachipna phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta thingc nuh e. Baley rui huhni guay khou duaplouna phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta thingc nuh e. Chy rui ahah, kachip, chy lev huh kak khou mpwan tipatna, baley rui key, ku, kathinpat, satgut twna phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta tei talicna lat khwan kazaat kazaat tipat re. Heickumna, **chy, huh, huhni, baley, tangvnangh, nwkwang, ruak, ruaknac** khatnic **phuan** miguay hei latsaamei naatnu guay the.

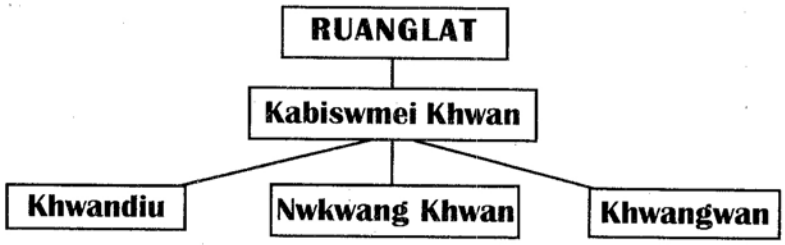
3.0 RUANGLAT KHWANLWAN KATHAIMEI
(Ruangmei Phonology)

Kahu khou nic kathai kan the. Aniw rui tingmik pum saabammei lat ti hei khwan tipatbammei, kabah tipatbammei khwankiak, khwanlangv, latkaeng kiak, khwangwan khatnic kahiak piumei lwan nai e. Mi guay hei kathaimei lwan ta **Phonology** twna kaw e. Ruanglat Phonology hei ncham khang mi Khwanlwan Kathaimei latlangv khouhei hylou e.

3.1.0 Kabiswmei Khwan (Basic Elements of Ruangmei Sound)

Lat hei saabammei khourui hykeymei lwan khou tatgut pwkhou kahiak kage naiguang e. Kahiak hei saabammei zaat zamh latkhwan *native sound* theitei layna khwandiu guay katakpat rey pwni. Kumna katakpatloumei khwandiu guay tei kahiak duanclou pwni. Mi hiak guay tei sinswna mi zaat zamh lat tei hy pwni. Kumna khwandiu katakpat khang rey liangmei khou thaylou nimei thu kathai bammei lat zamh **Kabiswmei Khwan** (*Fundamental Elements of the Native Sound)* hei kathaipat rey nina e. Mi thei hei layna Ruanglat khwan guay katakpatlou the.

Ruanglat zamh Kabiswmei Khwan hei kathumh nai e. Mi kathumh hei rui Ruangmei latkaeng guay ta kabah baicbaina tipatlou e. Mi kathumh hei kariuna Ruanglat Khwan kapwm tei sw e. Miguay hei the Ruanglat zamh **gay nkauhmei** (*uniqueness*), baihmei lev **nchamcmei** (*similarity*) khatnic **takhauhkhaumei** (*pecularity*) kiu. Ruanglat zamh kabiswmei Khwan hei kabangc khou tiiloumei hei kumcna zauc nuh e.



Mi kathumh hei Ruanglat zamh kakui kaluang swmei Sound System kiu the. Mi **kakui kaluang** swmei system lungc khouhei system kalau launa peyna nai dat he. Miguay tei nzaengna kathai ariu pwni e.

Thaygay khang aniw kabangc khouhei kumcna zauc kho -

(i) Ruanglat hei **khwandiu** *(phoneme)* hiak nsynna hyna kabah tipat ngammei latkaeng peyna nai e.

(ii) Miruc khoutei, **nwkwang Khwan** nic nai e. Nwkwang khwan rui Ruanglat ta kabah tipatloumei latkaeng peyna nai e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khouhei **nwkwang khwan** hei nic kabah tii ngammei **khwandiu** *(phoneme)* muay e.

(iii) Ruanglat hei khwangwan naimei lat re. Khwangwan rui latkaeng ta kabah tipat re. Khwangwan baic ethei latkaeng zamh kabah nic baic e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khouhei **khwangwan** hei nic kabah tii ngammei **khwandiu** *(phoneme)* muay e.

Thaylou khang:

(a) Khwandiu guay hei kahiak duanclou nina e. Nwkwang Khwan khatnic Khwangwan hei khwandiu e, kahiak duanclou nina e.

(b) Roman Script khou Nwkwang Khwan khatnic Khwangwan hiak maek ge.Kumna Ruanglat hy khang Roman Script hei sinsw pwkhou Nwkwang Khwan khatnic Khwangwan hy khang extra symbol kage nai e.

Karuc khou saabammei (i), (ii), (iii) hei zauc kho.

Khwandiu (*phoneme*) hiak na hyna kabah tipat ngammei latkaeng:

Latkamv khang -

/t/ + /a/ + /n/ = t+a+n = ***tan*** *(leg)* twmei kabah naimei latkaeng tipat re.

tan khouhei ***nwkwang khwan*** hiak ***'n'*** kahu khou haaplou ethei kabah baihmei latkaeng sw e. **n+tan** = ***ntan*** *(to train)* twmei kabah baihmei latkaeng sw e.

ntan khouhei ***bumkeymei khwangwan*** hiak **'v'** hei kathei khou haaplou ethei kabah baihmei latkaeng sw dat re. ***ntan+v = ntanv*** *(to tease)* twmei kabah baihmei latkaeng swdat re.

Kumna Ruanglat tihei kabah tipatbammei **Kabiswmei Khwan** *(fundamental elements of sound)* kathumh nai e. Mi kathumh hei rui Ruanglat khwan guay ta kabah tipatlou e. Mi kathumh kiu thu - **Khwandiu** *(phoneme)*, **Nwkwang Khwan** *(Prenasalised sound)*, khatnic **Khwangwan** *(Tone)* - mi guay hei e.

Latkamv:

Khwandiu hiak nsynna	Nwkwang Khwan	*Khwangwan*
t+a+n = ***tan*** *(leg)*	n+tan = ***ntan*** *(to train)*	ntan+v = ***ntanv*** *(to tease)*
		ntan+h = ntanh *(iron)*
r+aa = ***raa*** *(to dismantle)*	n+raa = ***nraa*** *(to split, to clear, to pick)*	nraa+v = ***nrav*** *(to make tower, to infect)*
		nraa+h = nrah *(folk violin)*
r+i = ri (more, overtake)	n+ri = ***nri*** (to rub, spin)	nri+c = ***nric*** (a wild vegetable)
		nri+h = nrih (axe)
d+u+i = ***dui*** (water)	n+dui = ***ndui*** (semi liquid)	ndui+h = ***nduih*** (to lay egg)

Kumhpui zaengrui Ruanglat Phonology hei kathumh patna kathai pwni. -

(1) **Phoneme** - Khwandiu lam kathai pwni,
(2) **Prenasalized sound** - Nwkwang khwan lam kathai pwni.
(3) **Tone** - Khwan-gwan lam kathai pwni.

3.2.0 KHWANDIU (Phoneme)

Phoneme (khwandiu) tabui ta cho ? Khwandiu akumhna matatpat tu cho ?

Kabah naimei khwanlangv akhat hamhethei latkaeng akhat tihei kakiak kakiak swbakkey pwkhou kabah tiipat ngammei khwankiak kiak mphang e.

Latkamv khang, kabangc khou tiiloumei latkaeng ***pu, mat, kai, tan*** miguay tihei swbak lana zauc kho. *(Slash kanei rui chapna hylou ethei mitei phoneme e, slash kazauh mak gethei khwanhiak ge.)*

latkaeng *(word)*	***khwanhiak*** *(symbol)*	***khwandiu*** *(phoneme)*
pu *(father)* =	p + u =	/p/ + /u/

pu twmei hei ***/p/*** lev ***/u/*** kariuna ***pu*** twmei kabah naimei khwan tipat re. Mitei kumcna ***mat, kai, tan*** khwankiak kathumh kathumh kariu lana kabah naimei latkaeng akhakhat tipat re.

latkaeng		***khwanhiak***		***khwandiu***
mai *(fire, tail)*	=	m+aa+i	=	/m/+/aa/+/i/
gan *(curry)*	=	g+a+n	=	/g/+/a/+/n/
lat *(language)*	=	l+a+t	=	/l/+/a/+/t/

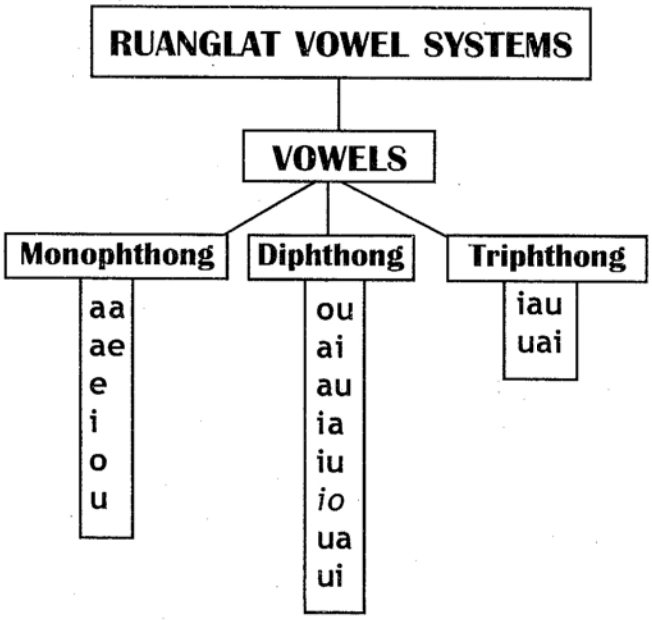
Karuc khou latkaeng guay swbakkey pwkhou nkhamh khou nthyam liangmei swbak dat nuh makmei khwankiak swna ***i a aa u p m g t n l*** hei laatow e. Mi khwankiak guay hei khat lev khat kariu lana kabah baic baicna tithay ngam e. Kumna mi guay hei Ruanglat khwan khou nthyam liangmei khwankiak raana the. Mi kumhmei khwankiak tihei **Phoneme** (Khwandiu) twna kaw e. **Segmental Phoneme** twna nic thay e.

Nthyam liangmei khou kabah tinai ngammei, khat rui khat phaan lyn nuhmakmei khwanhiak guay tatei phoneme twna kaw e.

Mi phoneme guay tihei kalangv kanei patna damc e. Kalangv khat ta **Vowel Phoneme,** khatnic kalangv kaneimei ta **Consonant Phoneme** twna kaw e.

3.3.0 VOWEL

Phoneme ta **Khwandiu** kaw e. Khwandiu pangc khou khwan naimei, karaana, kanei, kathumh kariuna khwan tipat ngammei khwandiu (phoneme) ta **Vowel Khwandiu** kaw e. Ruanglat khwan khou **Vowel System** hei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna zauc nuh e.



3.3.1 VOWEL MATATPATMEI (Establishment of Vowels)

Khwan Matatmei tabui ta cho?

Khwan kathaimei lwan khou aniw rui thaylou rey nimei nai e. Mikiu thu latkaeng hamhethei **khwanlangv**(syllable) akhat khwan hei khwankiak kanei kathumh duanckariu lana saapat tuang e. Mi khwankiak tihei **khwandiu** (phoneme) twna kaw e. Khwanlangv akhat khou khwandiu hiak hei tabui twn bam cho twmei hei khwan kathaimei khou matat re. Latkamv khang kiu - **lat** twmei latkaeng khouhei **/l/** hei **kahouh** khou, **/a/** hei **nchung** khou, **/t/** hei **luaimei** khou bam e. Mi khwandiu naimei bamv tatei **Place of Occurrence** twna thay e.

Places of Occurrence hei kathumh patna zauc e. Miguay kiu thu - *initial occurrence, medial occurrence* khatnic *final occurrence* mihei e.

Initial Occurrence (Kahouh khou)

Khwanlangv kahouhmei khou naimei, kazauhmei tatei **Initial Occurrence** twna thay e. **Initial (kahouhmei)** twna duina thay e, hy e.

Latkamv : ***nang, nap, nip.*** Mi khwanlangv khatnamei latkaeng guay khouhei **/n/, /n/, /n/** hei Initial Occurrence sw e.

Medial Occurrence (Nchung khou)

Khwanlangv nchung khou naimei, kazauhmei tatei **Medial Occurrence** twna thay e. **Medial, mid (nchung)** twna duina thay e, hy e.

Latkamv: ***nang, nap, nip.*** Mi khwanlangv khatnamei latkaeng guay khouhei **/a/, /a/, /i/** hei **Medial Occurrence** sw e.

Final Occurrence (Luaimei khou)

Khwanlangv luaimei khou naimei, kazauhmei tatei **Final Occurrence** twna thay e. **Final (luaimei)** twna duina thay e, hy e.

Latkamv: ***nang, nap, nip.*** Mi khwanlangv khatnamei latkaeng guay khouhei **/ng/, /p/, /p/** hei **Final Occurrence** sw e.

Latkamv khang Ruanglat khwan khou **/a/** hei nai e twna matatpat the. Kumethei Ruanglat khwan khou **/a/** hei tabuibui twn kazauh cho twmei matat dat pwni. Zauc kho - **ai, bam, ta** twmei chalah liangmei latkaeng kathumh khouhei **/a/** hei tabuibui twn kazauh cho twmei. **ai** khouhei **/a/** hei **initial** sw e; **bam** khou **/a/** hei **medial** sw e; khatnic **ta** khou **/a/** hei **final** sw e. Mihei kumcna, khwan kathaimei khou khwandiu (kahiak) kaguayna ta khat khat swna matat re, matat pwni.

Ntaw thu Ruanglat khwan khou vowel phoneme azuh nai cho twmei kathai kho, matat kho. Mihei kabangc khou tiiloumei **Minimal Pair Contrast** thiak hei piuna matatpat nuh e.

(a) VOWEL MATATPATMEI (Establishment of Vowels)

Ruanglat khwan khou Vowel akumh akumhmei tei cho, khatnic kasing azuh nai cho twmei hei matatpat khang sw kho. Kabangc khou tiiloumei ***minimal pair contrast*** guay hei zauc kho.

/a/ : /u/

tan
tun

Ruanglat khou **tan** hei phay ta e, **tun** hei kuat ta e. Mi khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng khat khat hei rui kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat tithay e. Mi khou hei ***t t*** hei lev ***n n*** hei thu nchamc ngam the, tihkic ***a u*** hei thu nchamc mak ge. Mi khouhei nchamc makmei ***a u*** kanei hei rui kabah baih baihmei khwanlangv hamh ethei latkaeng tipat re twmei how e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou ***a u*** khwan hei nai e kabah tipat ngammei khwan kiak ge twmei ndauh e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial Occurrance	*Medial Occurrance*	*Final Occurrance*
/a/	asanh	gan	na
	abah	nap	ta
	agay	bak	la
/u/	u (duh tho)	sun	pu
	-	thun	mu
	-	mun	tu

/i/ : /aa/

kin
kaan

Kin hei maansei kin ta e, **kaan** hei tat kaanmei ta e. Mi khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei hei khwan baic baic e, kabah nic baic baic e. Mi khouhei **k k** hei nchamc e, **n n** hei nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **i aa** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei hei rui kabah baih baihmei khwanlangv khat khat tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **i, aa** khwan hei nai e, mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwan kiak ge twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/i/	-	rin	si
	-	thing	ki
	-	tin	ri
/aa/	-	paan	paa
	-	daan	gaa
	-	laamh	chaa

/a/ : /ae/

lang laeng **lang, laeng** twmei khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei hei kabah baic baic e. Mi khou hei **l, l** kanei hei nchamc e; **ng, ng** hei nic nchamc e. **a, ae** hei nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei e. Mi nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei hei rui tiilou bammei khwanlangv hamhethei latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baihbaihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **a ,ae** khwan hei nai e, mi nei hei kabah tipat ngammei khwan kiak ge twmei ndauh e.

(/a/ hei karuc khou matatpatlou tang kan the, kazauhpui bamv nic lyan kanthe.)

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/ae/	-	baeng	-
	-	chaeng	-
	-	khaek	-

/e/ : /o/

the tho **the, tho** twmei khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei hei kabah baic baic e. Mi khou hei **th th** kanei hei nchamc e. Tihkic **e, o** hei nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei e. Mi nchamc makmei khwankiak kanei hei rui tiilou bammei latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baic baina tipatlou e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **e, o** hei latkaeng kabah tiipat ngammei khwankiak swna nai e twmei ndauh e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/e/	-	-	phe
	-	-	khe
	-	-	ge
/o/	-	-	kho
	-	-	tho
	-	-	lo

Thaylou nimei -

(1) **e** hei Ruanglat khwan khou **initial** khou khatnic **medial** khou maek ge, tihkic **final** khou nai e. Khatnic aspect marker swna piu e.

Latkamv :- khe, ge, the,

guang e, tii e, bam e, nai e.

(2) **o** hei Ruanglat khwan khou **initial** khou ***ov*** twmei khou na nai e. ***(ov hei kabiswmei hamhethei katupna piumei latkaeng hamh e.)*** Baihmei khou **initial** khou, **medial** khou maek ge, tihkic **final** khou nai e. Khatnic imperative mood marker swna piu e.

Latkamv :- bo, kho, tho, cho, lo;

saamei piu o, manggay o, kalum o.

Ntaw thu aniw thay the, mikiu thu Ruanglat khou kabah tipat ngammei monophthong hei kasing chanei nai e. Miguay tei kabangc khou hylou e.

/a/ /aa/ /ae/ /e/ /i/ /o/ /u/

Thaylou khang:

aa, ae hei kahiak kanei hamh e, akhatna de.
Kahiak kanei rui akhatna swmei tihei ***digraph*** kaw e.

Vowel akhatnamei khwan ta **Monophthong** kaw e. Kabangc khou tiiloumei guay hei Ruanglat khwan zamh Monophthong the.

a aa ae e i o u

(b) DIPHTHONG MATATPATMEI (Establishment of Diphthongs)

Diphthong twmei thu vowel kanei kariumei khwan ta e. Ruanglat khou Diphthong azuh nai cho, akumh akumhmei tei cho, matatpat khang sw kho.

/ei/ : /ai/

pei **Pei** hei kailuangcmei latlu dymdwanpui phwam ta e, **pai** hei nkamv pai,
pai biluai pai kumhmei kapai swmei ta thay e. Mi khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei khouhei **p, p** hei nchamc e, **ei** lev **ai** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi **ei** lev **ai** hei **p** lev kariuna kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **ei** lev **ai** diphthong nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/ei/	-	-	bei, nei, rei
/ai/	ai	-	mai, kai, lai

/ia/ : /ua/

sian **Sian** hei sianphai ta e, **suan** hei lu suanmei ta e. Mi khwanlangv kanei hei
suan kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi khouhei **s, s** hei nchamc e, **n, n** hei nic nchamc e. Tihkic **ia** lev **ua** hei nchamc mak ge. Kumna mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui khwanlangv hamhethei latkaeng kabah baih baihmei tipat re twmei how e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **ia** lev **ua** diphthong hei nai e mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwan kiak kanei kariumei e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bambv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/ia/	-	lian	-
	-	rian	-
	-	mian	-
/ua/	-	phuan	-
	-	nuan	-
	-	buanh	-

/iu/ : /ui/

piu
pui

Tiiloumei khwanlangv khatnamei latkaeng kanei **piu, pui** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi khouhei **p p** hei thu nchamc e, tihkic diphthong **iu ui** kanei hei nchamc mak ge. Kumna mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui kabah baih baihmei tipatlou e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **iu, ui** khwan hei nai e mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei hei ndauh e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	Initial	*medial*	*final*
/iu/	-	-	khiu, riu, liu
/ui/	-	-	mui, dui, rui

*(**/iu/** khwan hei sound environment thei layna **/io/** khwan saapui ganv nai e, tihkic kabah thu baih mak ge, intonation asaekc gut re. Kumna kabiswmei khwan kiu thu **/iu/** hei e.)*

/au/ : /ou/

rau
rou

Tiilou bammei latkaeng kanei **rau, rou** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **r, r** thu nchamc e tihkic **au** lev **ou** thu nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui mi latkaeng nei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipatlou e. Kumhpui zaengrui **au** khatnic **ou** hei Ruanglat khou kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei dinc e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	initial	*medial*	*final*
/au/	-	-	lau, hau, rau
/ou/	-	-	tou, bou, gou

Ntaw thu thay the, mi kiu thu Ruanglat khou **diphthong** tachat nai e. Mi guay kiu thu kabangc khou hyloumei guay hei e.-

/ia/ /iu/ /ei/ /ai/ /ou/ /au/ /ua/ /ui/

/io/ khwan nic nai e. Sound environment theilayna **/iu/** khwan hei **/io/** swna piupui twn nai e. Tihkic **/io/** khwan hei kabiswmei diphthong khwan hamh e, **/iu/** zamh variant de. Kumna **/io/** khwan hei Diphthong Khwan akhat swna baicna aseic nganv thu chak mak ge.

(c) TRIPHTHONG MATATPATMEI(Establishment of Triphthongs)

Vowel Kathumh Kariumei Khwan ta Triphthong twna thay e.

/iau/ : /uai/

riau
ruai

Tiilou bammei latkaeng kanei **riau, ruai** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng raana e. Mi latkaeng nei khou hei **r, r** thu nchamc e, tihkic **iau** lev **uai** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui mi latkaeng nei tihei kabac baih baihmei tipatlou e. Kumna mi khouhei aniw rui thay e, mikiu thu Ruanglat khwan khou **iau** khatnic **uai** hei nai e, mihei kabah tipat ngammei khwan e twmei hei e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence) :-

	initial	*medial*	*final*
/iau/	-	-	liau, phiau, kiau
/uai/	-	-	luai, tuai, suai

Ruanglat khwan khou triphthong kanei nai e, mitei kabangc khou hylou e.

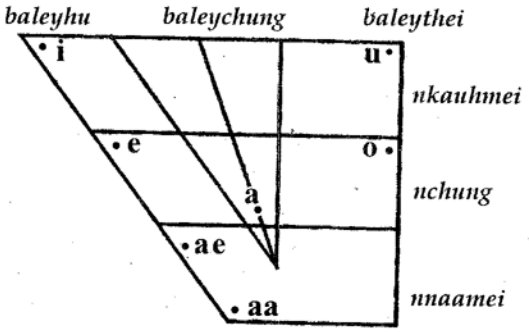
/iau/ /uai/ - mi nei hei e.

Mi triphthong kanei hei latkaeng **luaimei (final)** khou nai e.

3.3.2 Vowel Saapatpui Bamv

Ruanglat khou vowel **chanei** nai e. Miguay hei kalwn khatnic khwanbamv tei zauc kho.

Chy ngguic makmei ***Chy ngguicmei***



Mi vowel guay hei saa pwkhou khwan kachynmei nai e, kumna vowel kaguayna khwan kachynmei naimei phoneme raana e. Khwan patpui bamv ruaknac kachyn pwkhou ruak nic kachyn e. Kumna khwan kachynmei naimei phoneme ta Voiced Phoneme - ruak kachynmei phoneme twna kaw nuh e. Vowel guay hei saapat pwkhou khwan patpui bamv khou phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta taleina khamv khath twloumei hamhna huh lungc khou khamvmei maekna saapat re. Kumna **khwan kachynmei, phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta huh lungc khou tikhamv tuang maekna saapatmei khwanhiak ta vowel kaw e.**

Vowel ta kalwn dinc pwkhou sinsw bammei **baley, baley nkauhmei-naamei**, khatnic **chy lwnlung** mi kathumh hei gut re.

(i) Baley langv ta ***baley twan, baley laa, baley bi,***

(ii) baley nkauh-nnaa ta ***nkauh, nchung, nnaa;***

(iii) chy lwnlung ta ***chy ngguicmei, chy ngguic makmei***
- heickumna khaklangc pat re.

Karuc khou maengh khouhei zauc kho - mihei mwang lungc khourui vowel khwan saapatpui bamv nchinlou tuang e. Kabangc khou hyloumei vowel guay lwn dinc pwkhou mi maengh hei lev kariuna zauc o.

/i/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley twan nkauhna kakhaeng ku e, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi tihei **baley twan, nkauhmei, chy ngguic makmei** vowel kaw e. Mi vowel hei latkaeng **khwanlangv** *(syllable)* **nchung (med)** khou, **luaimei (final)** khou kazauh e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	bin	bi
-	dim	hi
-	git	si

/e/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei kalaan gei khou kakhaeng nkauhthau e, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi tihei **baley twan, kalaan, chy ngguic makmei** vowel twna kaw e. Mi vowel hei khwanlangv **kahouh** khou khatnic **nchung** khou karaana khwan swna zau mak ge. Khwanlangv **luaimei** (final) khou zau e, khatnic **verb, aspect marker** swna piu e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	e
-	-	khe
-	-	le

/a/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley laa kalaan gei khou nkauhna khuang ku e, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi vowel tihei **baley laa, kalaan nkauhmei, chy ngguic makmei** kaw e. Khwanlangv **kahouh** (initial) khou, **nchung** (med) khou, khatnic **luaimei** (final) khou zau e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
abah	mat	la
asanh	lat	na
Alangh	dat	ta

/ae/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley laa hei nnaakey khath twna saapat re, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi vowel tihei **baley twan, nnaamei, chy ngguic makmei** twna kaw e. Mi vowel hei khwanlangv **nchung** khou na zau e, **kahouhmei** khatnic **luaimei** khou zau mak ge, **k, ng** final swmei khwanlangv nchung khou na zau e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	baeng	-
-	kaek	-
-	laeng	-

/aa/ Mi vowel hei saapat pwkhou baley laa hei nnaakey khath twna saapat re, chy ngguic mak ge. Mi vowel tihei **baley twan, nnaamei, chy ngguic makmei** twna kaw e. Mi vowel hei khwanlangv **nchung** khou khatnic **luaimei** khou zau e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	baat	laa
-	kaan	paa
-	khaam	saa

/o/ Mi vowel hei baley bi tei kalaan khou nkauh khath twna khuangthau lana saapat re, chy ngguic e. Mi tihei **baley bi, kalaan nkauhmei, chy ngguicmei** vowel kaw e. Mi vowel hei khwanlangv kahouhmei khatnic **nchung** khou karaana khwan swna maek ge. Khwanlangv **luaimei** khou thouhmei **khatnic karianhmei** khou piu e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	o, kho, tho

Thaylou khang:

lou, khou, pou latkaeng khou **o+u** kariumei diphthong swna how e. Tihkic **ou** hei **a+u** zamh diphthong e. **a+u** diphthong hei **ou** swna hy e.**'o'** lev kariumei diphthong maek ge.

/u/ Mi vowel hei baley bi nkauh khuang kuna saapat re, chy ngguic e. Mi tihei **baley bi, nkauhmei, chy ngguicmei** vowel kaw e. **u** karaana dingmei latkaeng khatna nai e - ***u tho***. Mi hamhna **u** rui initial swmei latkaeng baihmei Ruanglat khou maek ge. Tihkic, **u** hei khwanlangv **nchung** khatnic **luaimei** khou geicna zau e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
u	gut	mu
-	bun	tu
-	sung	pu

KATHAIDWAN

1. Phonology tabui ta cho ? Phoneme hei kazaat azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui cho ?
2. Lat saa khou kazauhmei naatnu guay tabui tabui cho ? Kazanc hyna dinc o.
3. Ruanglat khwan ta kabah tipat bammei kabiswmei khwan kathumh nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ?
4. Vowel khwan hei akumhna matatpat tu cho ? Minimal Pair Contrast thiak sinswna
   /a/ : /aa/ khatnic **/i/ : /u/** hei Ruanglat khwan khou nai e twmei lyan o.

5. Ruanglat khou vowel azuh nai cho ? Hyna dinc o.
6. Vowel chanei hei saapat khou sinswmei baley langv, baley nkauh-naa, khatnic chy - mi guay zamh lwnlung chart khat hy lana dinc o.
7. Hyloumei vowel guay hei latkaeng **nchung** (medial) khou kazauhmei latkaeng khat khat hy o.
   i, a, ae, aa, u
8. Ruanglat khwan khou khwanlangv **nchung (medial)** khou maekmei vowel kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Dinc o.
9. Khwan patmei phoneme khatnic khwan pat makmei phoneme akumhmei ta kaw cho. Vowel guay hei khwan patmei phoneme ny khwan pat makmei phoneme cho ?

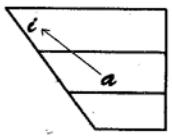
3.3.3 Vowel Cluster Saapatpui Thiak

(a) Diphthong Saapatpui Thiak

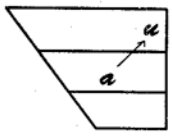
Latkaeng saapat pwkhou hamhethei syllable saapat pwkhou vowel phoneme khatna khwan chu ethei mi ta tei **monophthong** kaw e. Saapat pwkhou vowel khat khwan khourui kahouh lana luai pwkhou vowel baihmei khat khwan nic chu dat rethei mi ta tei **diphthong** kaw e. Latkaeng hamh ethei khwanlangv khat khou vowel kathumh khwan nai ethei mi tatei **triphthong** kaw e.

Ruanglat khwan khou diphthong tachat nai e.

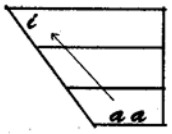
a+i = ei



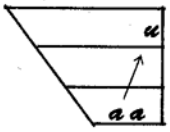
a+u = ou



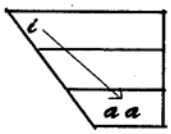
aa+i = ai



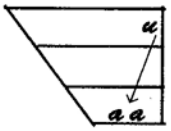
aa+u = au



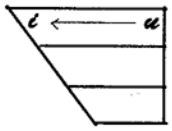
i+aa = ia



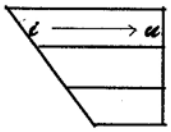
u+aa = ua



u+i = ui



i+u = iu



/ei/ /a+i/ hei /ei/ swna hy e.

/ei/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /a/ saapatmei twn khourui /i/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mihei khwanlangv luaimei khou open swna nai e. *Latkamv:-* **bei, gei, zei**

/ou/ /a+u/ hei /ou/ swna hy e.

/ou/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /a/ saapatmei twn khourui /u/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mihei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv*:- **lou, khou, sou**

/ai/ /aa+i/ hei /ai/ swna hy e.

/ai/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /aa/ saapatmei twn khourui /i/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mihei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv*:- **lai, kai, mai.**

/au/ /aa+u/ hei /au/ swna hy e.

/au/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /aa/ saapatmei twn khourui /u/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mihei khwanlangv luaimei khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv*:- **bau, lau, thau.**

/ia/ /i+aa/ hei /ia/ swna hy e.

/ia/ Diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /i/ saapatmei twn khourui /aa/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mihei consonant kanei kak khou **nchung** (med) khou nai e. *Latkamv:-* **riang, lian, tiap.**

Latkaeng asaekc **hia, sia** twmei kumhmei latkaeng khou na open swna nai e.

/io/ **/io/** diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /i/ saapatmei twn khourui /o/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mihei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv*:- **tio, rio.**

Thaylou khang:

> **io** hei **iu** zamh variation e. Mihei speech environment theilayna **iu** hamhethei **io** hei piu e. Kabah thu akhatna de. Kumna **io** tihei diphthong sing khou chaklou mak ge.

/iu/ **/iu/** diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /i/ saapatmei twn khou rui /u/ saapatmei biak tho guang e. Mihei khwanlangv luaimei khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv*:- **piu, liu, riu.**

/ua/ /u+aa/ hei /ua/ swna hy e.

/ua/ diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /u/ saapatmei twn khourui /aa/ saapatmei biak thu guang e. Mi hei consonant kak khou **nchung (medial)** khou nai e. *Latkamv:-* **buak, guang, ruat.**

Latkaeng asaekc **chua, kua** kumhmei khou na luaimei khou **open** swna nai e.

/ui/ **/ui/** diphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /u/ saapatmei twn khourui /i/ saapatmei biak thangc guang e. Mi hei khwanlangv **luaimei (final)** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv:-* **pui, rui, thui.** Mihei karaana rui khwanlangv kahouhmei luaimei swmei latkaeng akhatna nai e. Mikiu thu **'ui'** twmei hei e. Mihei **hui** twmei zamh variation, local accent kumcna how e.

Thaylou khang :

Ruanglat khwan khou nchung khou twmei thu consonant kanei kak khou ***ie*** *khwan maek ge,* ***ia*** *swna nai e. Latkamv:* ***pien, rien, lieng,*** *twna hy mak ge,* ***pian, rien, liang*** *twna hy e.*

Mitei kumc muayna Ruanglat khwan khou ***uo*** *khwan maek ge,* ***ua*** *khwan swna nai e. Latkamv:* ***guong, tuong, luong*** *twna hy makge,* ***guang tuang, luang*** *twna hy e.*

DIPHTHONG KAZAUHPUI BAMV

Diphthong	*khwanlangv kahouh khou*	*khwanlangv nchung khou*	*khwanlangv luaimei khou*
ai	ai	-	kai, lai
au	-	-	lau, kau
ei	-	-	bei, tei
ou	-	-	lou, khou,
ia	-	lian, sian	-
io	-	-	*tio, rio*
iu	-	-	tiu, riu, liu
ua	-	luan, guan	-
ui	-	-	dui, pui

Thaylou khang:

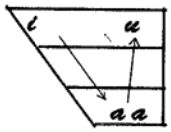
> ***io** hei **iu** zamh variation e. Mihei speech environment theilayna **iu** hamhethei **io** hei piu e. Kabah thu akhatna de. Kumna **io** tihei diphthong sing khou chaklou mak ge.*

(b) Triphthong Saapatpui Thiak

Ruanglat khwan khou khwanlangv khat khou vowel kathumh kariumei khwan nai e. Mi tihei **triphthong** kaw e. Ruanglat khwan khou triphthong kanei nai e. Mi kiu thu **iau, uai** - mi nei hei e.

/iau/ /i+aa+u/ hei /iau/ swna hy e.

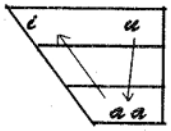
Saapatpui Thiak



/iau/ triphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /i/ saapatmei twn khourui /aa/ saapatmei twn guang e, khoutei rui /u/ saapatmei twn tei guangna luailou e. Mihei khwanlangv **luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv* - **liau, riau, phiau.**

/uai/ /u+aa+i/ hei /uai/ swna hy e.

Saapatpui Thiak



/uai/ triphthong hei saapat pwkhou baley hei /u/ saapatmei twn khourui /aa/ saapatmei twn guang e, khatnic mi khoutei rui /i/ saapatmei twn tei guangna luailou e. Mihei **khwanlangv luaimei** khou **open** swna nai e. *Latkamv* - **luai, guai, suai.**

Kumna Karuc khou kathai kanmei theilayna Ruanglat Khwan khou Vowel System hei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna zauc nuh e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Monophthong tabui ta cho ? Tabui tabui cho? Hy o.
2. Diphthong tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khwan khou diphthong azuh nai cho ? Hy o.
3. ***ei*** khatnic ***ou*** hei diphthong phaan lynmei hiak raana the. Mi diphthong hei tabui tabui vowel duanc kariu tuang cho ?
4. Ruanglat diphthong ***ai, au, ia, iu, ua, ui*** saapatmei thiak hyna dinc o.
5. Kabangc khou hyloumei latkaeng guay khou hei naimei diphthong guay phungcpat ro.

   bou _____, mui _____, kai _____, hau_____, zei_____, guak_____,

   lian_____.
6. Triphthong tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khwan khou triphthong azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui tei cho ?
7. Triphthong ***iau, uai*** naimei latkaeng kanei hy o.

3.4.0 CONSONANT

3.4.1 CONSONANT MATATPATMEI (Establishment of Consonants)

Vowel khwankiak hei vowel nsynna kariuna kabah naimei khwan tipat ngam e. Tihkic, Consonant khwankiak guay thu kaniw raana kariuna kabah naimei khwan tipat ngammak ge. Tihkic, **Consonant** khwan hei vowel lev kariuna latkaeng kabah tipat ngammei khwankiak kang e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan tipat ngammei consonant kang tatei Ruanglat Consonant twna kaw e.

Mi Ruanglat Consonant guay hei akumh akumhna matatpat tu cho khatnic kasing azuh nai cho twmei thay khang **Minimal Pair Contrast** thiak khou kidaana kathai kho. Kabangc khou tiiloumei guay hei khat tangv khat zaucna kathai kho.

/p/ : /b/

pei
bei

Pei hei namv khou naimei latdym kai ta e, **bei** hei phah e. Mi khwanlangv (syllable) khat khatnamei latkaeng kanei hei kabah baic baic e. Mi latkaeng nei khou hei **ei ei** thu nchamc e, tihkic **p b** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei **p** lev **b** hei rui latkaeng kabah baih baihmei tipatlou e twmei how e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou kabah tipat ngammei **p b** consonant khwan kiak kanei hei nai e twmei howpat re.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		Initial	*medial*	*final*
	/p/	pam	kaput	nap
		pu	champan	katup
		pui	kapanv	tip
	/b/	bi	chabamv	-
		bamv	chabaa	-
		bangh	kabah	-
Sequences	/pb/	-	napbuy	-
	/bp/	-	-	-

/ph/ : /m/

phay
may

Tiilou bammei khwanlangv khat khatnamei latkaeng **phay** hei 100 ta e, **may** hei kagaanv hamhethei kanow maek kanmei, ntamvna lungc bammei ta thay e. Mi latkaeng kanei hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi latkaeng kanei khou hei **a a** hei nchamc e, **y y** hei nic nchamc e. Nchamc makmei hei **ph m** kanei hei e. Kumna mi nchamc makmei **ph m** kanei hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipatlou e. Kumhpui zaengrui Ruanglat khwan khou **ph m** consonant khwan kiak kanei hei nai e twmei hei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv(Places of Occurrence)

		Initial	*medial*	*final*
	/ph/	phah	chaphaa	-
		phay	chaphwmmei	-
		phouh	taphuap	-
	/m/	mai	kamang	pam
		mih	tamai	tam
		mwn	chamou	dam
Sequences	/phm/	-	-	-
	/mph/	-	ramphic	-

/t/ : /th/

ting
thing

ting, thing kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei khou hei **i i** hei nchamc e, **ng ng** hei nchamc e. **t th** kanei hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei kanei hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **t th** hei kabah tipat ngammei consonant khwan kiak nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	initial	*medial*	*final*
/t/	tam	latai	matat
	tan	katam	kadat
	tauh	chatuan	tachat
	initial	*medial*	*final*

	/th/	thay	katham	-
		thun	chathuan	-
		thing	kathuan	-
Sequences	/tth/	-	-	-
	/tht/	-	-	-

/d/ : /r/

dui
rui

dui, rui hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng nei khou hei **ui ui** hei nchamc e. Tihkic **d r** kanei hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei **d** lev **r** hei rui latkaeng nei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re twmei how e. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **d** lev **r** consonant khwan kiak nai e twmei hei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv(Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/d/	dam	tadut	-
		dwng	chadaamei	-
		dyn	padeih	-
	/r/	ri	charuk	-
		rik	charyn	-
		rungh	tarat	-
Sequences	/dr/	-	-	-
	/rd/	-	-	-

/k/ : /g/

kai
gai

kai, gai hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi latkaeng nei khouhei **ai, ai** hei nchmac e. Tihkic, **k** le **g** hei nchamc mak ge. Nchamc makmei **k** lev **ga** hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **k** lev **ga** consonant khwan kiak hei nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/k/	kang	takin	bak
		kamei	chakiu	thik
		kiang	chakut	saek
	/g/	gaa	pagi	-
		gou	kagit	-
		guangh	chagou	-
Sequences	/kg/	-	rakgaanc	-
	/gk/	-	-	-

/kh/ : /ng/

khay
ngay

khay, ngay hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei khou hei **ay ay** hei nchamc e, tihkic **kh** lev **ng** hei nchamc mak ge. Nchamc makmei **kh** lev **ng** hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou kabah tipat ngammei **kh, ng** khwan kiak nai e twmei ndauh e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence):-

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/kh/	khav	tiangkhou	-
		khuk	makhou	-
		khunh	chakhaeng	-
	/ng/	ngaana	pangu	pang
		ngauh	tangat	baeng
		ngouh	changanh	swang
Sequences	/khng/	-	-	-
	/ngkh/	-	tiangkhaa	-

/n/ : /s/

nam **nam, sam** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng nei khou
sam hei **a, a** nchamc e, **m, m** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **n** lev **s** hei nchamc mak ge. Nchamc makmei **n** lev **s** hei rui mi latkaeng kanei t hei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou kabah tipat ngammei **n** lev **s** khwan kiak nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/n/	nap	tanaatc	paan
		nuy	chanaa	gan
		nang	tunac	tan
	/s/	saa	kasai	-
		sam	tasianc	-
		sung	tasiaw	-
Sequences	/ns/	-	sansimei	-
	/sn/	-	-	-

/z/ : /ch/

zaeng **zaeng, chaeng** twmei latkaeng kanei hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **ae, ae** hei nchamc e, **ng, ng** hei nic
chaeng nchamc e.Tihkic **z** lev **ch** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei hei rui latkaeng kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **z, ch** khwan kiak hei nai e twmei thay e.

Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

	initial	*medial*	*final*
/z/	zaa	pazeic	-
	zei	mazah	-
	zouh	tazu	-
/ch/	chaa	machuay	-

		chaeng	machunh	-
		chuang	tachat	-
Sequences	/zch/	-	-	-
	/chz/	-	-	-

/l/ : /h/

lau
hau

lau, hau hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng nei khou hei **a, a** hei nchamc e. **u, u** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **l** lev **h** hei nchamc mak ge. Nchamc makmei **l** lev **h** hei rui mi latkaeng kanei tihei kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **l** lev **h** nai e twmei thay e.

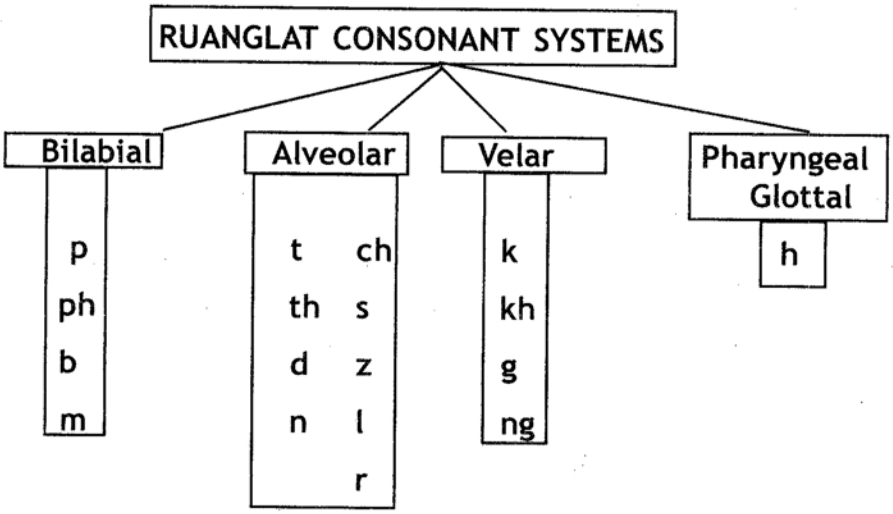
Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

		initial	*medial*	*final*
	/l/	lai	baley	
	/h/	hau	ahuih	-
		haan	chahav	-
		hyang	kahaw	-
Sequences	/lh/	-	-	-
	/hl/	-	-	-

Karuc khou kathaimei khouhei rui aniw thay e, mikiu thu Ruanglat khou consonant khwan 18 nai e. Miguay kiu thu - **/p/ /b/ /ph/ /m/ /t/ /th/ /d//n/ /ch/ /s/ /z/ /r/ /l/ /k/ /g/ /kh/ /ng/ /h/** hei e. Mi tihei **Consonant Phoneme** kaw e. Mi guay hei Ruanglat khwandiu raana the.

3.4.2 Ruanglat Consonant System

Ruanglat zamh **Consonant System** hei saapatpui bamv theilayna kabangc khou hei kumcna zauc nuh e.



Hamhethei, kabangc khouhei kumcna zauc nuh e.

Bilabial (Chy kanei)	**/p/ /ph/ /b/ /m/**
Alveolar (Huhni)	**/t/ /th/ /d/ /n/**
	/ch/ /s/ /z/
	/r/ /l/
Velar (Tangvnangh)	**/k/ /kh/ /g/ /ng/**
Pharyngeal glottal (Ruaknac)	**/h/**

KATHAIDWAN

1. Consonant akumh swna matatpat nina cho? **/t/ : /d/** twmei phoneme hei Ruanglat khwan khou nai e twmei akumhna matatpat ne? Minimal Pair Contrast piuna dinc o.
2. Ruanglat khou consonant phoneme phaan lynmei hiak guay hy o.
4. Kabangc khou hyloumei latkaeng kapaa kapaa khou hei vowel khatnic consonant matatpat ro.
   (i) laa, lu; ta, ti;
   (ii) kai, lai; si, bi;
5. Ruanglat khwan khou khwanlangv hamhethei latkaeng **luaimei (final)** khou consonant khwan charuk nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Latkaeng hyna dinc o.
6. Ruanglat khou Nwkwang Khwan nai e. Mitei tabui tabui hiak rui, akumhna madanc cho? Latkamv hyna dinc o.

3.5.0 Consonant Lwn Dinhmei
(Description of Consonants)

3.5.3.1 Consonant Saapatpui Bamv

Ruanglat khou consonant khwan **ruhtachat** nai e. Mi consonant guay hei saapatpui bamv tho - chy, huh, huhni, tangvnangh mbuaihmei khatnic ruak mi guay hei e. Mi guay tei khat khat swna zauc kho.

(a) Chy kanei khou saapatpui bamv swmei (bilabial)	- **p ph b m**
(b) Huh-huhni khou saapatpui bamv swmei	- **t th d n**
(c) Huhni lev Tangvnangh twn saapatpui bamv swmei	- **ch s z**
(d) Huhni khou saapatpui bamv swmei	- **l r**
(e) Tangvnangh mbuaihmei twn saapatpui bamv swmei	- **k kh g ng**
(f) Ruaknac khwan patpui twn saapatpui bamv swmei	- **h**

3.5.3.2 Consonant guay saapatpui thiak

Mi consonant guay hei saapatpui thiak zauc kho.

(a) Phuan zamh mpwan thingc lana mpat huakhhuakna saapatmei - **p ph b**
t th d
k kh g

(b) Phuan zamh mpwan thingc lana nzaengna mpwan ta tei kachip lana saapatmei - **ch s z**

(c) Nwkwang chaeng mpwan tipatna saapatmei - **m n ng**

(d) Mpwan ta ruak khou chap lana saapatmei - **h**

(e) Baley rui huhni khou rwngna mpwan ta baley tin kanei biak tipatna saapatmei - **l**

(f) Baley rui huhni khou rwngna kadunhna saapatmei - **r**

Karuc khou saa kanmei consonant guay tihei saapatmei kathiak guay khourui **consonant** hei tabui ta cho twmei hei thay the. Phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta mwang lungc khou katwn twn thingc lana, khamv lana, kachip lana saapatmei khwan tatei **consonant** kaw e.

3.5.1 Khwan naimei (Voiced) khatnic Khwan maekmei (Voiceless)

Phuan zamh mpwan rui khwan patpui bamv ruak twn pat ruan pwkhou consonant asaekc thu ruak kachynmei - **khwan naimei** (voiced) consonant sw e, asaekc thu ruak kachyn makmei - **khwan maekmei** (voiceless) consonant sw e.

Ruak kachynmei - **khwan naimei** (voiced) consonant phoneme phaan lynmei **hiak** guay -

b d g m n ng l z r

Ruak kachyn makmei - **Khwan maekmei** (voiceless) consonant phoneme phaan lynmei **hiak** guay -

p ph t th k kh ch s h

Khwan maekmei consonant guay hei saapat pwkhou khwan naimei vowel **/a/** lev kazauhna saapat re, kumtina khwan maekmei consonant guay hei mwang rui saapat pwkhou khwan naimei kumcna chu e.

3.5.4 Consonant guay lwn dinhmei

Consonant ta kalwn dinc pwkhou latbamv kathumh gut re - (1) **saapatpui bamv,** (2) **saapatpui thiak**, khatnic (3) **ruak kachyn ny kachyn mang ?** - mi guay hei dinhmei kage nai e.

CONSONANT GUAY LWN DINHMEI

Saapatpui Bamv → **Saapatpui thiak** ↓	/chy kanei	/huh-huhni	/huhni hu biak	/huhni /kalungc biak	/tangvnangh mbuaihmei	/ruak /khwanpat bamv(glot)
Mpwan ta thingc lana mpat huakh patmei	p b	t d			k g	
Mpwan thingc lana mpwan bangv lev kazauhna mpat huakh patmei	ph	th			kh	
Mpwan thingc lana nzaengna mpwan ta kachipna mpat patmei			ch			
Nwkwang chaeng mpwan patmei, nw-kwang chaeng thinghmei	m	n			ng	
Baley kanaek kanei biak thangc mpwan patmei				l		
Mpwan ta kachipna tipatmei			s z			h
Baley rui huhni twn ntwngna kadunhna mpwan tipatmei				r		

Consonant guay hei kalwn dinhmei kazauhna latkaeng guay khou tabui twn kazauh bo twmei tei zauc kho -

/p/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou phuan zamh mpwan ta chy kanei rui mbamh binna thingc e, tangvnangh mbuaihmei twn tei nkauh kuna nwkwang chaeng tei swthingc e. Chy kanei tei ahahpat pwkhou mpwan tei mwang lungc khourui pak phuthphut pat re. Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn mak ge, khwan maek ge. Mi consonant tihei ruak kachyn makmei, chy kanei zamh, mpwan thinghmei consonant kaw e. **/p/** khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei, nchung, luaimei *(initial, medial, final)* khou nai e.

Latkamv : -

initial	*medial*	*final*
pui	kapanv	palup

/b/ Mi consonant hei saapatmei thiak khatnic saapatmei bamv **/P/** zamh lev nchamc rap de. Khiannahmei kiu mihei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwan nai e. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, chy kanei zamh, mpwan thinghmei consonant kaw e. **/b/** khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei*(initial)* khou, nchung *(medial)* khou nai e, tihkic latkaeng luaimei *(final)* khou maek ge.

Latkamv : -

initial	*medial*	*final*
bi	tabui	-

/ph/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou **/p/** lev nchamc rap de khatnic saapat pwkhou phuan khourui patmei mpwan mpat huakh twna saapat re. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, chy kanei zamh, mpwan thinghmei, mpwan mpat huakhmei consonant twna kaw e. Mi khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei *(initial)* khou khatnic nchung *(medial)* khou piu e. ph khwan hei latkaeng luaimei (final) khou maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
phumei	kaphut	-

/m/ Mi consonant hei saapat ni khou chy kaneimei kachip lana phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta thingc lana nwkwang chaeng tipat re. Mihei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, chy kanei khatnic nwkwang zamh consonant kaw e. **/m/** consonant khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei, nchung, luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
mai	chamou	tam

/t/ Baley twan rui huh khatnic huhni khou ranvna nap lana phuan khourui patmei mpwan tatei thingc lana, nwkwang chaeng nic thingc lana, baley tei mpatpat raph twna mi consonant hei saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn mak ge, khwan maek ge. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, huh-huhni zamh, mpwan thinghmei consonant twna kaw e. **/t/** khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei khou, nchung khou khatnic luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
ting	katap	tat

/d/ Mi consonant hei **/t/** lev nchamc raphrapna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwan nai e. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, huh-huhnii zamh, mpwan thinghmei consonant twna kaw e. **/d/** khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei, nchung khou nai e. Latkaeng luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
daihmei	kadat	-

/th/ consonant hei **/t/** lev nchamc rapna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou mpwan bangv khat kazauhpat re. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, huh-huhni zamh, mpwan thinghmei, mpwan bangv kazauhmei Consonant kaw e. **/th/** khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei, nchung khou nai e; luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
thing	katham	-

/n/ Mi consonant hei saapat ni khou baley hei huhni khou duap lana phuan khou patmei mpwan ta thingc lana, phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta nwkwang chaeng mpatpat re. Mi hei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, huhni khatnic nwkwang zamh consonant kaw e. /n/ consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouhmei, nchung khatnic luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv -

initial	*medial*	*final*
nap	tunac	gan

/l/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei huhni khou gitlou lana phoumei kanei biak mpwan mpatpat re. Nwkwang chaeng thingc e, saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e. Khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, huhni khatnic baley kanei biak consonant kaw e. Mi /l/ consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouh khou, khatnic kachung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv : -

initial	*medial*	*inal*
lat	palup	-

/s/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei huhni khou guang diangc lana phuan zamh mpwan ta kachipna kalap khou tipat re, nukwang chaeng thingc e. Saapat pwkhou ruak kadunh mak ge, khwanring pat makge. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, huhni zamh, mpwan ta kachipna tipatmei consonant twna kaw e. /s/ consonant khwan hei latkaeng kahouh khou nchung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
saa	kasic	-

/z/ Mi consonant hei **/s/** kumcna saapat re, ruak kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, huhni zamh, mpwan kachipna tipatmei consonant kaw e. Mi consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouh khou, nchung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
zak	mazah	-

/r/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley twan hei huhni kalungcmei twn tei rwnglouna kadunh khath twna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruak kalung e, khwanring pat re, khatnic tangvnangh mbuaihmei tei rui nwkwang chaeng thingc e. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei huhni zamh, baley kadunhmei consonant kaw e. Mi **/r/** consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouh khou khatnic kachung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
rou	tarai	-

/ch/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley hei huhni khou duaplana mpwan thingc e, nwkwang chaeng nic mpwan thingc e, mpwan ta kachipna nzaengna mpatpatna saapat re, kumna saapatpui ganv khou baley tei huhni kalungc biak tho guangdiangcna phuan khourui patmei mpwan ta kachipna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruak kadunh mak ge. Mi tihei ruak kachyn makmei, huhni kalungc biak zamh, mpwan thingc lana kachipna nzaengna mpatpatmei consonant twna kaw e. Mi **/ch/** consonant khwan hei latkaeng kahouh khou khatnic nchung khou nai e. Luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
chah	tachat	-

/k/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley bi nkhuang kuna tangvnangh mbuaihmei twntei nkatna mpwan ta thingc e, nwkwang chaeng nic thingc e, kumna baley tei rui mpwan tei mpat huakh twpat re. Mihei rahpat pwkhou ruaknac kachyn mak ge, khwanring pat mak ge. Mi tihei ruaknac kachyn makmei, baley khatnic tangvnangh mbuaihmei khou mpwan thinghmei consonant kaw e.

Mi **/k/**khwan hei latkaeng kahouhmei khou, nchung khou khatnic luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
kai	chakiu	padik

/g/ Mi consonant hei **/k/** lev nchamc raphrapna saapat re. Saapat pwkhou ruaknac kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruaknac kachynmei, tangvnangh mbuaihmei mpwan thinghmei consonant kaw e. Mi **/g/** consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouhmei, nchung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
gin	pagi	-

/kh/ Mi consonant hei **/k/** lev nchamcna saapat re, saapat pwkhou mpwan bangv pat kazauh e. Mi tihei ruaknac kachyn makmei, tangvnangh mbuaihmei, mpwan thinghmei, mpwan bangv kazauhmei consonant kaw e. Mi **/k/** consonant khwan hei latkaeng kahouh khou, nchung khou nai e. Luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv: -

initial	*medial*	*final*
khaa	chakhaeng	-

/ng/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou baley bi rui tangvnangh mbuaihmei twn tei duap lana mpwan ta thingc lana nwkwang chaeng mpwan mpatpat re. Mi hei saapat pwkhou ruak kachyn e, khwanring pat re. Mi tihei ruak kachynmei, tangvnangh mbuaihmei nwkwang consonant kaw e. Mi **/ng/** consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouhmei, nchung khatnic luaimei khou nai e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
ngaana	tangat	thing

/h/ Mi consonant hei saapat pwkhou khwan patpui bamvmun khou mpwan ta kachipna mpat pat re. Mbuaihmei tangvnangh tei kakhaeng thauna mpwankai ta thingc e. Ruak kachyn makge, khwanring maek ge. Mi tihei ruak kachyn

makmei, khwanpatpui bamv zamh, mpwan ta kachipna mpatpatmei consonant kaw e. Mi **/h/** consonant khwan hei latkaeng zamh kahouh khou khatnic nchung khou nai e, luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
hau	kahaw	-

3.5.2 Kazauhpui bamv (Places of Occurrence)

Karuc khou consonant kazauhpui bamv kathaimei khou hei aniw rui howpat re, mi kiu thu -

(a) kahouh khou (Initial/Occurrence)

Consonant hiak kaguayna latkaeng kahouh khou, khwanlangv kahouh khou ***initial occurrence*** sw e, kahouh khou kazauh ngam e.

(b) nchung khou (Medial Occurrence)

Consonant hiak kaguayna latkaeng nchung khou ***medial occurrence*** sw ngam e, nchung khou kazauh ngam e.

(c) luaimei khou (Final Occurrence)

Ruanglat khwan khou luaimei khou ***final occurrence*** khou kabangc khou hyloumei consonant hiak guay hei kazauh e.

p m t n k ng

Latkamv -

luaimei (final) khou **p**	=	kap, nap
luaimei (final) khou **m**	=	bam, sam
luaimei (final) khou **t**	=	mat, lat
luaimei (final) khou **n**	=	gan, tan
luaimei (final) khou **k**	=	bak, zak
luaimei (final) khou **ng**	=	nang, mang

Kumna aniw rui thaylou nimei kiu thu **p m t n k ng** hei Ruanglat khwan zamh ***consonant finals*** guay the.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Chy kanei kachipna saapatmei consonant hiak guay hy o.
2. Nwkwang chaeng khwan patmei hiak tabuibui tei cho ? Hyna nchin o.
3. Kabangc khou tiiloumei consonant guay hei nchung khou naimei latkaeng khat khat hy o

   d, g, n, s, p

4. Ruanglat khwan khou consonant final azuh nai cho? Tabuibui tei cho?
5. Nang raana Ruanglat consonant ruhna tachat hei chart khat hy lana kalwn dinc o.
6. Ruangmei khwan khou kazauh makmei English alphabet guay hyna nchin o.

3.6.0 NWKWANG KHWAN MATATPATMEI

(Estabishment of Prenasal Sounds)

Ruanglat khwan khou Nwkwang Khwan *(prenasalized sound)* hei kabiswmei khwan e. Kalam thu mi khwan hei vowel khatnic consonant kumcna latkaeng kabah tipat re. Mihei thaygay khang kabangc khou hyloumei **Minimal Pair Contrast** thiak khouhei kathai kho.

Nwkwang Khwan hei independent syllable hamh e. Khwan zamh kiaklei, fraction of sound de. Kumhpui zaengrui syllable hamhethei latkaeng kahouhmei consonant tei lev saa nchamc raphrapna saapat pwni.

(nwkwang khwan hei ***im, in, an*** twna hy mak ge. ***im in an*** twna hy ethei indpendent syllable sw the, prenasalized khwan zamh character tei maan kan the.)

/p/ : /mp/

pui **mpui** — **pui, mpui** twmei hei kabah naimei latkaeng kanei e. Mi khouhei **ui, ui** diphthong hei nchamc e. Tihkic **p** lev **mp** kanei hei nchamc mak ge, **p** hei prenasalize sw mak ge, **mp** hei prenasalize sw e. Mi ncharnc makmei **p** lev **mp** hei rui kabah tibaic baiclou e.

/t/ : /nt/

tan **ntan** — **tan, ntan** twmei hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi khouhei **a, a** hei nchamc e, **n, n** hei nic nchamc e. Tihkic **t** lev prenasalized **nt** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi nchamc makmei **t** lev **nt** hei rui kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tiswlou e.

/g/ : /ngg/

gaa **nggaa** — **gaa, nggaa** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng e. Mi khouhei **aa, aa** hei nchamc e.Tihkic, **g** lev prenasalized **ngg** hei nchamc mak ge. Kumna mi nchamc makmei **g** lev **ngg** hei rui kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tiswlou e.

Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **prenasalised sound** (nwkwang khwan) nai e, mihei rui latkaeng kabah tipat re twmei thay e.

Kathiak theilayna thu prenasalized sound naimei consonant hiak guay tei karuc khou swloumei kumcna *minimal pair contrast* sw lana kathai ni tuang e. Tihkic, mitei sw mak sihnic nchamnac nunc rui thay ngam pwni dithe twna ningna consonat kaguay tei *minimal pair contrast* thiak tei swlou mak khe. Kumna duina prenasalized consonant guay tei kabangc khou nchinlou e.

(a) **Bilabial Consonant** guay hu khou **m** haaplouna Nwkwang Khwan hei hy e.

mp mph mb mm

Latkamv:-

mp	-	mpang	mpinh	mpui
mph	-	mphaimphin	mphut	
mb	-	mbaa mban	mbeih	
mm	-	mmaan	mmit	mmuan

Thaylou khang 1

- ***mm** prenasalized sound hei nai khwan sihnic aseicdou hymei rau e. Prenasalized sound tatei **a** rui lynna hy bam e. Kumna **mm** hymei hei geih mak ge.*

Latkamv :-

mmaan hei **amaan**, **mmuan** hei **amuan** twna hy e.

(b) **Alveolar Consonant** guay hu khou **n** haaplouna Nwkwang Khwan hy e.

nt nth nd nn

Latkamv :-

nt	-	ntaa	ntak	ntwn
nth	-	nthai	nthan	ntheih
nd	-	ndaa	ndat	ndeih
nn	-	nna	nnian	nnuai

Thaylou khang 2

*nn prenasalized sound hei nai khwan sihnic aseicdou hymei rau e. Prenasalized sound tatei **a** rui lynna hy e. Kumna **nn** hei hymei geih mak ge.*

Latkamv :-

***nnaa** hei **anaa**, **nnian** hei **anian**, **nnuai** hei **anuai** twna hy e.*

(c) **Velar consonant**, **g** hamhmei, guay hu khou **n** haaplouna prenasalized sound hei hy e.

nk nkh nng

Latkamv :-

nk	-	nkamv	nkit	nkun
nkh	-	nkhav	nkhamh	nkhuai
nng	-	nngan	nnguih	nngau

(d) **Velar consonant g** hu khou **ng** haaplouna prenasalized sound hei hy e.

ngg

Latkamv :-

ng nggin ngguay nggut

Thaylou khang 3

Karuc khou saa kan the. Nwkwang Khwan hei independent syllable hamh e. Khwan zamh kiaklei, fraction of sound de. Kumhpui zaengrui syllable hamhethei latkaeng kahouhmei consonant tei lev saa nchamc raphrapna saapat pwni. (Nwkwang khwan hei ***im, in, an*** twna hy mak ge. ***im in an*** twna hy ethei indpendent syllable sw the, prenasalized sound zamh character tei maan kan the.)

Nwkwang Khwan Kazauhpui Bamv (Places of Occurence)

Nwkwang Khwan hei khwanlangv kahouh khou na nai e, khwanlangv luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

		initial	*medial*	*final*
m	-	mpui	-	-
n	-	nthan	-	-
ng	-	nggouh	-	-

Nwkwang Khwan hei khwanlang kanei kathumh naimei latkaeng khou kahu khou na nai e, nchung khatnic luaimei khou maek ge.

Latkamv :-

		initial	*medial*	*final*
m	-	mphwanmei	-	-
n	-	ntanhdymei	-	-
ng	-	nggudumei	-	-

Nwkwang Khwan Hymei

Nwkwang Khwan hei bilabial khwan khou, alveolar khwan khou khatnic velar khwan khou akumhna hy ni cho twmei tei kabangc khou nchinlou e.

Bilabial	***m***	mp	mph	mb	mm
Alveolar	***n***	nt	nth	nd	nn
Velar	***n***	nk	nkh	nng	
	ng	**ngg**			

Ruanglat khwan khou Nwkwang Khwan haaplouna kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tipat re. Nwkwang Khwan hei *kahouhmei* consonant hu khou hy e.

(Prenasalized Sound = P, Prenasalized khwan hiak = m, n, ng).

Latkamv :-

paa	=	pam, apammei		
P + paa	=	mpaa	=	guaih mpaa e.
phai	=	chaeng phai		
P + phai	=	mphai	=	kou mphai thay e.
bam	=	phaythuapc bam,		
P + bam	=	mbam	=	kapumc mbam tiipat re.
maan	=	ramh maan/thing maan		
P + maan	=	mmaan	=	mmaanmei, syan sw amaan e.
tan	=	tanbaeng		
P + tan	=	ntan	=	chadaamei, taanv ntan e.
thanv	=	lat thanvmei		
P + thanv	=	nthanv	=	suhzam khou nthanv gut re
dyng	=	phaydyng		
P + dyng	=	ndyng	=	neih ndyng the.
nah	=	nah launa		
P + nah	=	nnah	=	sucpav nnah e.
kai	=	lunghmei kai		
P + kai	=	nkai	=	si nkai e.
khav	=	dui bangckhou naimei khav		
P + khav	=	nkhav	=	ryanraamei ta nkhavlou e.
ngan	=	ngan e (boss sw e).		
P + ngan	=	nngan	=	chaeng nngan e.
gaa	=	gaa hyang kakap e.		
P + gaa	=	nggaa	=	luaigaa nggaa e.

Prenasalized Sound Hiak

/m/ /n/ /ng/

3.7.0 KHWANLANGV (Syllable)

Lat khatnic latriak kathaimei khou latrian, latkaeng, khwanlangv ta khaklangcna kathai e.

Syllable tabui ta cho? **Syllable** twmei hei latkaeng khou khwanlangv akhat ta e. Mihei kabah naimei nai e, kabah pat makmei nic nai e.

Latkamv khang:

kai Mihei khwanlangv *(syllable)* akhatnamei latkaeng e.

tachat Mihei hei khwanlangv kanei naimei latkaeng e. **ta, chat** hei syllable akhat khat re. Mi latkaeng hei baibakpat rethei syllable kanei nai e. Syllable khat khat hei karaa raana kabah pat ngammakmei khwanlangv raana e.

gadaicbut Mihei syllable kathumhmei latkaeng e. **ga** hei gah ta e, **daic** hei daihmei ta e, **but** hei chinghbut ta e. Syllable kathumhmei kabah nai ngam e.

3.7.1 Syllabification

Latkaeng khat hei khwanlangv khat, kanei, kathumh hamhethei kathumh khangsuangc geicna duanc kariu nuh e. Kumna latkaeng khat khou khwanlangv khatnamei ta Monosyllable, kanei naimei ta Disyllable, kathumhmei ta Trisyllable khatnic padeihmei Tetrasyllable kaw e.

Latkamv:

Monosyllable (Khwanlangv khatnamei)	=	ting
Disyllable (Khwanlangv kanei)	=	tingthai
Trisyllable (Khwanlangv kathumh)	=	tingthaisuh
Tetrasyllable(Khwanlangv padeihmei)	=	tingthaisuhbungc

3.7.2 Syllabic Pattern

Syllable hei khwankiak khat hamhethei khat khangsuangc geicna kariuna duanc e. Duina saa pwkhou - vowel nsynna, hamhethei consonant lev vowel kariuna duanc e.

Vowel + Vowel (VV)	=	ai
Consonant + Vowel (CV)	=	pu, bi, gaa
Consonant + Vowel + Vowel (CVV)	=	pui, mai, lau
Consonant + Vowel + Consonant (CVC)	=	pak, gut, nang

3.7.3 Kinds of Syllable

Open syllable

Vowel rui luaimei (final) swmei khwanlangv ta **open syllable** kaw e.

Latkamv = gaa, si, bw

Close syllable

Consonant rui luaimei *(final)* swmei syllable ta **close syllable** kaw e.

Latkamv = nap, guak, syang

3.7.4 Sound Cluster (Khwan Kariumei)

3.7.5 Vowel Cluster

Ruanglat khwan khou vowel cluster nai e. Vowel cluster twmei hei syllable khat khou vowel khat khangsuangc geicna kariumei ta e. Mitei **diphthong, triphthong** twna kahu khou ncham kan the.

3.7.6 Consonant Cluster

Ruanglat khou consonant cluster maek ge. Tihkic **hykaluaihmei** (transliterate) latkaeng khou khatnic **nsucna piumei latkaeng** (loan word) guay khou nai geic e.

Latkamv khang :-

(a) Transliterate latkaeng

School	=	Skul
Hebrew	=	Ibri
Christ	=	Khrista
Cross	=	Kros

(b) Loan word

Andrew	=	Andrew
Mark	=	Mark
cricket	=	cricket
play ground	=	play ground

KATHAIDWAN

1. Khwanlangv (Syllable) tabui ta cho ? Latkaeng khat khou khwanlangv azuh nai cho ?
2. Tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khou hypat ro.

   Monosyllable ----------

   Disyllable ----------

   Trisyllable ----------

   Tetrasyllable ----------
3. Khwanlangv khatnamei, kaneimei khatnic kathumhmei latkaeng nang raana makumhna hy o.
4. Open syllable khatnic close syllable tabui ta cho ? Hyna dinc o.
5. Ruanglat khwan khou vowel cluster kazaat kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho?
6. Ruanglat khwan khou consonant cluster nai ny maek cho ?
7. Consonant cluster naimei loan word khatnic transliterate word kanei kanei nang raana makumhna hy o.

3.8.0 KHWANGWAN
(Tone)

Ruanglat hei kandih namruc khou saabammei khwangwan naimei lat pangc khou akhat re. Ruanglat hei **contour tone language** e. Ruanglat hei lat baihmei guay lev nchamcmei khatnic nchamc makmei peyna nai e. Ruanglat zamh kabiswmei khwan (fundamental elements of sound) kathumh nai e twmei kathai kan the. Mi kabiswmei khwan kathumh hei rui Ruanglat khwan guay ta kabah tipatlou e. Mi kathumh kiu thu **Khwandiu** *(phoneme),* **Nwkwang Khwan** *(prenasalized sound)* khatnic **Khwangwan** *(tone)* hei e. Mi ruc khoutei **Khwangwan Kalaihmei** *(tone shift)* nic nai e. Khwandiu *(Phoneme)* lam khou kahu khou ncham kan the. Ntaw thu Khwangwan *(Tone)* khatnic Khwangwan Kalaihmei *(tone shift)* lam kathai kho.

3.8.1 RUANGLAT KHWANGWAN (Ruanglat Tone System)

Kahiak kanei, kathumh kariu pwkhou kabah naimei latkaeng pat re. Mi latkaeng hei khwangwan baic pwkhou kabah baihmei khat pat dat rethei mi tatei *tone* hamhethei *pitch* kaw e. ***Tone hamhethei pitch ta khwangwan twna kaw e.***

Tone language khou naimei tone kazaat kanei patna thay e - **registered tone** khatnic **contour tone.** Ruanglat hei **contour tone language** e.

Ruanglat hei tone (khwangwan) naimei lat re. Vowel khatnic consonant rui kabah naimei latkaeng tipatmei kumna Ruanglat tihei khwangwan rui nic latkaeng zamh kabah tei baic baicna tipat re.

Ruanglat khou -

Tanpui tanpu kaw-laa nu e.

Stephen rui Gayriliu ta katham e.

Si nkai e.

Kai gei e.

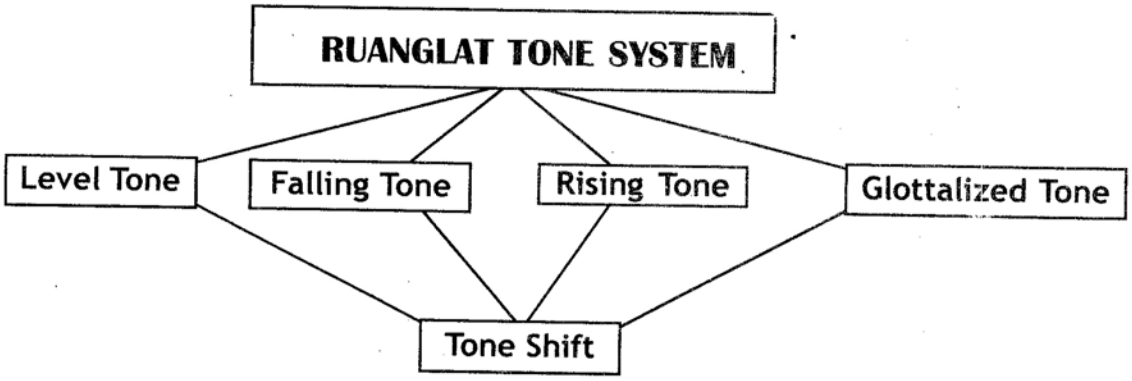
Ai bi lau tat re.

Mi latrian guay hei tabui saa nii tu cho twmei kabah thay ngammak ge.

'Ai bi lau tat re' twmei latrian hei kabah naimei latrian khat re. Mi latrian hei khwangwan baic baicna padeih saa nuh e, kabah nic baic baicna padeih patna pac nuh e.

Ai bi lau tat re	=	Ai bi lingcloumei laupuk thu tat re
Ai bi lau tat re	=	Ai bi neyna kakhaa tat re.
Ai bi lau tat re	=	Ai phu rui bi lauc tat re.
Ai bi lau tat re	=	Ai nap phaan bi tu tat re.

Mi khouhei **lau** twmei latkaeng khou hei khwangwan padeih nai e. Mi khwan gwan padeih hei rui latkaeng zamh kabah nic padeih tipatlou e. Mi kumhmei khwangwan padeih padeih naimei latkaeng hei Ruanglat khou peyna nai e. Mi rui dinhmei thu Ruanglat khou tone padeih nai e twtuang e. Ruanglat hei **contour tone** language e. Ruanglat khou mphaihmei khwangwan, bumkeymei khwangwan, ngangckumei khwangwan khatnic ruaknac khamv khakh twmei khwangwan - mi padeih hei nai e. Mi ti hei **level tone, falling tone, rising tone** khatnic **glottalised tone** twna kaw e. Kumna Ruanglat khou **Tone System** hei kabangc khou tiiloumeihei kumcna zauc nuh e.



Tone padeih naimei latkaeng asaekc kabangc khou hylou e.

Level tone(-|)	Falling tone(\\\|)	Rising tone(/|)	Glottalised tone(?|)
lai (pot)	***lai*** (to follow)	***lai*** (to change)	***lai*** (to pour)
lau (field)	***lau*** (to borrow)	***lau*** (to dig out)	***lau*** (to eat)
suang (to ordain)	***suang*** (local deity)	***suang*** (to cook)	***suang*** (quick)
guai (once)	***guai*** (all)	***guai*** (sickly)	***guai*** (cow)
raa (to dismantle)	***raa*** (god)	***raa*** (to tell)	***raa*** (to chirp, roar)

Khwangwan Hymei *(Symbolization of Tone)*

Tone naimei lat hei tone hy kazauh nina e. Tone kathumh naimei lat hei tone kanei madanc nina e. Tone padeih nai ethei kathumh madanc nina e. Khat thu madanc lak nina e. Madanc makmei tone lwn tei 'mi tone the' twmei thaylou nina e. Tone madanhmei twmei thu **tone hiak naina hy o** twtuang e.

Ruanglat hei nsunh nsah ta saa makna major tone padeih nai e. Kumna tone kathumh madanc e, tone khat thu madanh mak ge, madanh makmei tone tei level tone the. **Falling tone** ta **v, rising tone** ta **c** , **glottalised tone** ta **h** piuna madanc e, khatnic **falling tone** khou **i** phaan **y, u** phaan **w** piu e. Kumna Ruanglat khwangwan pat nuh khang rui **c v h y w** mi guay khouhei ***value kathanc tiilouna*** tone symbol, tone hyhiak tiswlou the.

3.8.2 Tone Establishment *(Khwangwan Matatpatmei)*

Tone contrast hei kathai khang **'gan'** twmei latkaeng hei zauc kho. **'gan'** twmei hei Ruanglat khou nap lev tu kariumei gan ta thay e, kabah naimei kabiswmei latkaeng khat re. Mihei **level tone** e. Mihei khwangwan baic baicna saa pwkhou kabah baic baic e. Mitei kabangc khou hei zauc kho.

/v/ v khwankiak khwan hei Ruanglat khwan khou maek ge. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna falling tone hiak swna laathaulou the.

gan **gan, ganv** hei kabah baih baihmei latkaeng khat khat re. **gan** *(curry)*,
ganv **ganv** *(time)* ta thay e. Mi latkaeng kanei khou hei **g, g** hei nchamc e; **a, a** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **n** lev **nv** nchamc mak ge. Mi khouhei tone contrast nai e. **gan** hei **level tone** e, **ganv** hei **falling tone** e. Falling tone tihei **v** rui madancna khiannahmei tei lyan e. Kumna **tone** kanei khiannahmei rui kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tipatre. Kumna Ruanglat khwan khou **level tone** khatnic **falling tone** hei kabah tipat ngammei khwangwan e twmei thay e.

Kumna level tone hei ***first tone*** the khatnic falling tone hei ***second tone*** the.

Latkamv :-	*level tone*	khaa	bam	tan
	falling tone	khav	bamv	tanv

/c/ Mi khwankiak khwan hei Ruanglat khwan khou maek ge. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna rising tone hiak swna laathaulou the.

gan **gan** *(curry)*, **ganc** *(to throw away)* hei kabah naimei latkaeng khat khat re.

ganc Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **g, g** hei nchamc e; **a, a** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **n** lev **nc** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi khou hei tone contrast nai e. **gan** hei level tone e, **ganc** hei *rising tone* e. Mi rising tone tihei **c** piuna madanc e. Kumna tone kanei khiannahmei heirui latkaeng zamh kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khou **rising tone** hei kabah tipat ngammei khwangwan e twmei ndauh e.

Rising tone hei ***third tone*** the.

Latkamv :-

level tone	=	pu	bang	ding
rising tone	=	puc	bangc	dingc

/h/ Mi khwankiak hei Ruanglat khou khwan nai e tihkic mihei final position khou maek ge. Kumtina Ruangmei pioneer writer nunc rui glotalized tone madanh khang piuguang khwan e. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna glotalized tone hiak swna laathaulou the

gan **gan** *(curry)*, **ganh** *(lightning)* hei kabah naimei latkaeng khat khat re.Mi
ganh latkaeng kanei khou hei **g, g** hei nchamc e; **a, a** nic nchamc e. Tihkic, **n** lev **nh** hei nchamc mak ge. **gan** hei *level tone* e, **ganh** hei *glottalized tone* e. Mi glottalized tone tihei **h** piuna madanc e. Kumna tone kanei khiannahmei heirui latkaeng zamh kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Kumna Ruanglat khou glottalized tone hei kabah tipat ngammei khwangwan e twmei ndauh e.

Glottalized tone hei ***fourth tone*** the.

Latkamv :-

level tone	=	zam	luai	guang
glottalized tone	=	zamh	luaih	guangh

/y/ Mi khwankiak khwan hei Ruanglat khwan khou maek ge. Kumna mi khwankiak tihei value kathanc tiilouna falling tone vowel hiak swna **/i/** phaan piu khang laathaulou the

hi **hy**

hi *(to scratch)*, **hy** *(to write)* hei kabah naimei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei khouhei **h**, **h** hei nchamc e. Tihkic, **i** lev **y** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi khouhei tone contrast nai e. **hi** hei *level tone* e, **hy** hei *falling tone* e. Falling tone khouhei **i** phaan **y** lyn e.

Latkamv :-

level tone	=	bi	ding	rian	guai
falling tone	=	by	dyng	ryan	guay

/w/

Mi khwankiak khwan hei Ruanglat khwan khou maek ge. Kumna mi khwankiak ti hei value kathanc tiilouna falling tone vowel hiak swna **/u/** phaan piu khang laathaulou the

nu

nu *(ear)*, **nw** *(nasal mucus)* hei kabah naimei latkaeng khat khat re. Mi latkaeng kanei khou hei **n**, **n** hei nchamc e. Tihkic, **u** lev **w** hei nchamc mak ge. Mi khou hei tone contrast nai e. **nu** hei *level tone* e, **nw** hei *falling tone* e. Falling tone khou hei **u** phaan **w** lyn e.

Latkamv :-

level tone	=	pu	liu	ruang	riau
falling tone	=	pw	liw	rwang	riaw

Thaylou nimei -

First tone **(level tone)** hei madanh mak ge, kahiak duanh mak ge.

Second tone **(falling tone)** khou khwanlangv luaimei khou **v** hy kazauhlou e. Falling tone khou **i** phaan **y** hy e, **u** phaan **w** hy e; i, u kameimei kazauh ethei nkhamhmei tei kalaih e.

Third tone **(rising tone)** khou khwanlangv luaimei khou **c** hy kazauhlou e.

Fourth tone **(glottalized tone)** khou khwanlangv luaimei khou **h hy** kazauhlou e.

Kumna Ruanglat khwan pat nuh khangrui **c v h y w** miguay tihei tone symbol tiswlou the, tone hyhiak tiswlou e. **h** hei Ruanglat khou khwandiu de tihkic pupouh nunc rui mi tihei glottalised tone hyhiak swna piu guang the. Kumna aseicdou nganvna piu bam tuang e.

Tone Marker khang laathauloumei guay - ***/v/ /c/ /h/ /y/ /w/***

Ruanglat hei phoneme kariumei kabah naimei latkaeng **'bam, tan, gan'** khou hei **tone** haaplouna kabah baih baihmei latkaeng tipat re. Tone hei kabah naimei khwan swpui zaengrui kahiak duanclou e, symbolise swlou e. Mitei kabangc khou zauc kho.

Latkamv :-

(Level tone = -|, falling tone = \|, rising tone = /|, glottalised tone = ?|)

bam -|	=	bam	=	Apu kai khou **bam** e
bam ||	=	bamv	=	Chouki hei **bamv** e.
bam /|	=	bamc	=	Tarav **bamc** e
bam ?|	=	bamh	=	Phey **bamh** khang kage nai e.
tan -|	=	tan	=	Kamei **tan** rui tat khwan e.
tan ||	=	tanv	=	Napbut ta **tanv** kaw e.
tan /|	=	tanc	=	Kamei **tanc** e twmei thay e.
tan ?|	=	tanh	=	**Tanh** khang nap tu geic o.
gan -|	=	gan	=	Thun **gan** tu e.
gan ||	=	ganv	=	Kathaipui **ganv** thay o.
gan /|	=	ganc	=	Mphuammei guay **ganc** o.
gan ?|	=	ganh	=	Tingthinc **ganh** key e.
bang -|	=	bang	=	Tabui bang cho? (Thingbang).
bang ||	=	bangv	=	Gin bangv katup e.
bang /|	=	bangc	=	Guaih bangc tho.
bang ?|	=	bangh	=	Kamei bangh thu hamh e.

Low tone khwan khou **i, u** phaan **y, w** sinsw e. **y w** hei low tone khou **i u** nai naimei twn tei lyn pwni, tihkic **i, u** kaneimei nai nchamc ethei nkhamh khamhmei ta lyn pwni.

Latkamv :-

i/y	hi	= bi **hi** e.	hy	= latrik **hy** e.
	huai	= gan **huai** tu e.	huay	= kapna **huay** e.
	sian	= **sian** giat re.	syan	= **syan** ry e.
u/w	nu	= **nu** e.	nw	= **nw** pat re, karaeng e.
	run	= py khou **run** e.	rwn	= si dui khou **rwn** e.
	khuan	= tauh **khuan** e.	khwan	= maansei **khwan** chu e.

Karuc khou saa kanmei kumcna Ruanglat tone hymei latkaeng asaekc kabangc khou hei hylou e, zauc kho.

Level tone	***falling tone***	***rising tone***	***glottalised tone***
raa	rav	rac	rah
ri	ry	ric	rih
su	sw	suc	suh
nei	ney	neic	neih
lai	lay	laic	laih
riu	riw	riuc	riuh
lau	law	lauc	lauh
lou	low	louc	louh
dui	duy	duic	duih
tan	tanv	tanc	tanh
guai	guay	guaic	guaih
suang	swang	suangc	suangh
riau	riaw	-	riauh

3.8.3 Tone Shift

Ruanglat khou **tone shift** (khwangwan kalaihmei) nai e. Tone shift twmei thu latkaeng zamh kabah thu kalaih mak tihkic khwangwan thu kalaih twmei ta e. Mihei grammatical criteria, form, meaning lev kariang naimei latbamv e.

Latkaeng tei grammatical form khatnic case kalaih pwkhou, khwangwan nic kalaih e. Nominal form khourui grammartical criteria khou, noun khourui verb khou, adjective khou kalaih pwkhou khwangwan kalaih e. Mi tihei **tone shift** twna thay e.

(a) Genitive case khou **glottalised tone** hei **rising tone** khou kalaih e.

Chah hei **chac** twna khwangwan shift sw e.
Chini **chac** zangv e. Chahnuy **chac** zangvgay e.
Nriangcluangcmei **chac** zangvgay chuy e.

Zouh hei **zouc** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Napnaeng **zouc** zangvgay e.
Martha kai **zouc** ndeih e.

(b) Genitive case khou **rising tone** hei **level tone** khou kalaih e.

Zouc hei **zou** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Khow**zou** meic ta ndev e.
Laulaih **zou** nrak ge.
Suc hei **su** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Kaidaeng **su** nrak ge.
Khowraamv **su** kangaengv nraeng e.

(c) Noun khou bammei glottalised tone guay adjective hamhethei yerb ngguanh pwkhou rising tone khou kalaih e.

Kai **daih**mei hei **daic** e.
Nap **geih**mei hei **geic** e.
Taanv **taanhmei** nunc **taanc** e.
Puatc **phunghmei** nunc rui **phungc** e.

(d) Nominal hamhethei adjective, adverb khou prefix swna **ram** khatnic **karam** haaplouna noun ngguanh pwkhou tone kaguayna level tone khou raana kalaih e.

daihmei hei **ramdai** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Mi guak **ramdai** kumhmei ai howlou mak ge.

suhmei hei **ramsu** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Mai chuapmei **ramsu** khaengvlou khang thay mak ge.

zow hei **ramzou** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Dui **ramzou** nthaek zat mak ge.

geihmei hei **karamgei** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Karamgei tei saa ngam mak ge.

daihmei hei **karamdai** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Karamdai tei kachav simei ramdai kumc e.

zow hei **karamzou** twna khwangwan kalaih e
Karamzou tei zow katumc hak e.

Khwangwan kalaihmei hei Ruanglat khwan khou kabiswmei lwnlung - fundamental element khat re. Mihei grammar lev kariang nai e. Kumhpui zaengrui Ruanglat hymei khou tone shift hei hy e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Ruanglat tihei kabah tipat bammei kabiswmei khwan azuh nai bo? Tabuibui tei cho?

2. Lat kathaimei khou tone zaat kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Ruanglat hei tabui tone zaat cho ?

3. Ruanglat khou tone azuh nai bo ? Tabuibui tei cho ?

4. Tone shift tabui ta cho ? Tone shift hei tabui lev kariang nai bo ?

5. Ruanglat khou tone hymei hiak tabuibui tei cho ?

6. Low tone hymei khou **i, u** phaan tabui hiak rui lyn cho ? Latkaeng khatna khou **i u** nai nchamc ethei akumhna hy ni cho ?

7. Khwangwan (Tone) hiak hy o.

   mphaihmei khwangwan hiak =

   bumkeymei khwangwan hiak =

   dungckumei khwangwan hiak =

   ruaknac khamvkhakh hiak =

4.0 KAHIAK LAATHAUMEI
(Symbolization)

Symbolization tabui ta cho?

Khwandiu (Phoneme) phaan kahiak duancloumei ta **symbolization** twna thay e. Latkamv khang Phoneme /a/, /k/ phaan Ruanglat khou **a, k** twna kahiak duanclou e, Bengalimei rui **অ, ক** twna duanclou e, Hindi khou **अ, क** twna duanclou e. Mihei kumcna Phoneme kaguayna Hindumei rui Hindi hiak khou, Bengalimei rui Bengali hiak khou, Assamese rui Assames hiak khou duancna hy e.

Ruanglat hy khang Ruangmei khwanhiak maek ge, Ruanglat hei Roman hiak khou hy e. Kumna Ruanglat khwandiu guay hei Roman hiak khou symbolise swlouna hy e.

Kaganv khat khou Ruanglat hei Bengali hiak piuna hylou khwan e. Mitei Ruanglat khwan hymei khou guangtangc kunghmei naipui zaengrui Bengali hiak hei ganckey lana Roman script hei piu dat khwan e. Bengali hiak pwnic Roman hiak bam pwnic Ruangmei khwan katuk kalik thu hyguangtangc ngam makmei peyna nai e. Nsucmei hiak rui Ruanglat khwan hyguangtangc ni tu hamh e. Ruanglat hy khang Ruanglat hiak kage nai e.

Thaurey khou kahiak laathaumei ganv khou Roman alphabet twna kawmei hiak 26 hei kapwmna laathauna piuguang the.

Lat khat hy khang kage naimei khwan hiak sing lev Vowel khatnic Consonant phoneme sing hei chaa raphrapna laathau ni tuang e. Tihkic Roman Alphabet khouhei Ruanglat khwan hy khang kage naimei hiak asaekc maek ge. Ruanglat hy khang kage maekmei hiak asaekc nai e. Mi hei tabui swtina cho? Romanmei khwan hei aniw khwan lev nchamc mak ge, Englishmei khwan nic aniw khwan lev nchamc mak ge. Kumtina Roman alphabet hei aniw khang chaanah khang kunghmei nai e. Ruanglat khwan khou common phoneme nai e, prenasalised sound nai e, tone nai e. Tihkic Roman hiak khou common phoneme hiak na nai e, prenasalised sound hiak maek ge, tone hiak maek ge. Kumhpui zaeng rui Ruanglat khwan hy khang Roman alphabet laathau pwkhou prenasalised sound khatnic tone hy khang kahiak gaat re. Kumna mi gaatmei twn hei guangtangh khang Ruanglat khou piu makmei Roman hiak asaekc value kathanc tiilouna piu khang kage asaekc nai e. Mihei kumcna lat baihmei guay rui nic

kahiak hei duancpat duancgutna piumei lwan nai e. Mi lwan kahak hei Ruanglat hymei khou piu bam e.

Ruanglat khwan hy khang laathaumei khwan hiak guay hei kathai khang kabangc khou hylou e.

4.1.0 Roman's Alphabet

Roman alphabet khou kahiak 26 nai e. Mi khoutei **vowel** hiak 5, **consonant** hiak 19, khatnic **semi-vowel** hiak 2 nai e.(Mi hei Englishmei rui piumei thiak khou tei saa tuang e.)

VOWEL hiak:	**a**	**e**	**i**	**o**	**u**				
SEMI VOWEL hiak:	**w**	**y**							
CONSONANT hiak:	**b**	**c**	**d**	**f**	**g**	**h**	**j**	**k**	**l**
	m	**n**	**p**	**q**	**r**	**s**	**t**	**v**	**z**

4.2.0 Ruanglat Khwan Hiak

Ruanglat khwan nthuihna hy khang khwan, khwangwan, nwkang khwan hy khang vowel 28, prenasalised khat khatnic consonant 18 kage nai e. Roman alphabet khou Ruanglat khwan pat nuhmei Consonant 18 khatnic Vowel 5 hei mphang e, tihkic baihmei guay thu mphang mak ge. Kumpui zaengrui kahiak asaekc thu value kathanc tiilouna duancpat duancgutna laagut the.

Ruanglat khwan guay hy khang laathauloumei hiak guay.

Ruanglat khwan hy khang laathauloumei hiak 29 nai e. Mi khoutei vowel hiak 9, consonant hiak 18 khatnic tone hiak 2 e.

VOWEL hiak:	**a**	**aa**	**ae**	**e**	**i**	**y**	**o**	**u**	**w**
		(Kathanc swna laagutmei **aa ae y w**)							
CONSONANT hiak:	**p**	**ph**	**b**	**m**					
	t	**th**	**d**	**n**					
	ch	**s**	**z**						
	l	**r**							
	k	**kh**	**g**	**ng**					
	h								

PRENASALIZED hiak: ***m n ng***

TONE hiak: **c v w y *h*** (kathanc swna laagutmei **c v w y**)

4.3.0 Saapatpui bamv theilayna

Mi hiak guay hei *saapatpui bamv* theilayna khatnic *khwankang* theilayna kalangv kalangv lou kaduai nuh e.

(a) Saapatpui bamv

chy kanei	-	p	ph	b	m
huh, huhnii	-	t	th	d	
huhnii (hu biak)	-	n	l	s	z
huhnii (kalung biak)	-	r			
huhni-huh biak	-	ch			
tangvnangh mbuaihmei	-	k	kh	g	ng
Ruak	-	h			

(b) Khwankang theilayna

Bilabial	-	p	ph	b	m	
Alveolar	-	t	th	d	n	
	-	ch	s	z	r	l
Velar	-	k	kh	g	ng	
Pharyngeal Glottal	-	h				

4.4.0 Pahpui khwan

P/p	**Ph/ph**	**B/b**	**M/m**	
pa	pha	ba	ma	
T/t	**Th/th**	**D/d**	**M/m**	
ta	tha	da	na	
Ch/ch	**S/s**	**Z/z**	**L/l**	**R/r**
cha	sa	za	la	ra

K/k	**Kh/kh**	**G/g**	**Ng/ng**
ka	kha	ga	nga

H/h
ha

(a) **Roman Alphabet khou Ruanglat khwan maekmei hiak**

c f j q v w x y

(b) **Ruanglat khwan hy khang value kathanc tiilouna laathauloumei hiak**

'c' hei **rising tone** hyhiak swna laathaulou the

'v' hei **falling tone** hyhiak swna laathaulou the

'w' hei **falling tone** khou **'u'** phaan hy khang laathaulou the

'y' hei **falling tone** khou **'i'** phaan hy khang khang laathaulou the.

(c) **Ruanglat hy khang laathau makmei Roman Alphabet**

F f J j Q q X x

Mi hiak guay twmei thu (c) khou naimei hiak guay hei Ruanglat khwan hy khang piu mak ge. Tihkic loan word guay khou thu piuna hy e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Ruanglat khou khwan hiak kaguayna azuh nai cho ? Vowel hiak azuh nai cho ? Consonant hiak azuh nai cho ?

   khwan hiak kaguayna ..... consonant hiak guay.....

   vowel hiak guay ..... tone hiak guay .....

2. Ruanglat khwan khou khwankang theilayna kabangc khou tiiloumei khwankang padeih hei nai e. Khwankang hiak guay tei hy o.

   bilabial khwankang _____ **velar** khwankang _____

   alveolar khwankang _____ **phryngeal glottal** _____

3. Ruanglat khwan khou tangvnangh mbuaihmei khourui patmei khwan azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?

4. Ruanglat khwan khou maekmei Roman alphabet hiak azuh nai bo ? Tabui tabui tei cho?

5. Roman alphabet khourui Ruanglat tone hy khang laathauloumei hiak azuh nai bo ? Tabui tabui tei cho ?

5.0 HYMEI LWAN
(Writing System)

Ruanglat tihei **khwandiu** *(phoneme)*, **nwkwang khwan** *(prenasalized sound)* khatnic **khwangwan** *(tone)* rui latkaeng zamh kabah tipatlou e. Mihei kahu thangc ncham kan the. Mi ruc khoutei **khwangwan kalaihmei** *(tone shift)* nai e, tone shift rui grammatical form tikalaihlou e. Kumhpui zaengrui Ruanglat hymei khou phoneme, prenasalized sound, tone khatnic tone shift hei hy e, hymak nuhmak ge.

Duina saa pwkhou Ruanglat hei **prenasalized sound + consonant + vowel + tone** (PCVT) hy e. Mitei kabangc khou lyanlou e.

(P = Prenasal, C = Consonant, V = Vowel, T = Tone)

CV	=	**raa** (kai raamei)	**khaa** (raengmei, kagiatcmei)
CVT	=	**rav** (ravsic)	**khav** (dui khou naimei khav)
PCVT	=	**nrav** (paeng nravmei)	**nkhav** (khanggou nduanghmei)
CVC	=	**tan** (phay)	**bam** (bammei, kai khou bam e)
PCVC	=	**ntan** (tichadaamei)	**mbam** (tidunghmei, kapwm)
CVCT	=	**tanv** (napbut)	**bamv** (dwng)
PCVCT	=	**ntanv** (Kadakmei)	**mbamv** (duimei, nnaamei)

5.1.0 VOWEL HYMEI

Thaylou rey nimei -

Khwan kathaimei khou **kahouhmei** *(initial)*, **nchung** *(medial)*, **luaimei***(final)* twmei guay hei **latkaeng** *(word)* hamhethei **khwanlangv** *(syllable)* lungc khou khwandiu hiak zamh position ta saa tuang e.

5.1.1 Monophthong hymei (Vowel khatna hymei)

a - **a** hei karaana initial, medial khatnic final khou hy pwkhou kalwn kalaih makna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
abah	bam	la
amuc	gan	na
apui	tat	ta

aa - **aa** hei latkaeng khwan **kahouh** *(initial)* khou hy mak ge, **aa+i** hei ***ai*** twna hy e, nchung khatnic luaimei khou **aa** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
ai	laamh	gaa
-	gaanv	khaa
-	saan	saa

Nchung khou consonant kanei kak khou **aa** hy e, **open** final khou **level tone** khou ***aa*** hy e, baihmei tone khou ***a*** khatna + ***tone*** haaplouna ***av, ac, ah*** hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	laan	khaa
-	laanv	khav
-	laanc	khac
-	laanh	khah

ae - **ae** hei **kahouh** khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy mak ge, nchung khou na hy e, - **ng** lev **k** rui *final* swmei *syllable* **nchung** khou na hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	gaek	-
-	laeng	-

e - **e** hei **kahouhmei** khou hy mak ge, **nchung** khou hy mak ge. **luaimei** khou hy e. ***e, ge, re, the*** twna hy e.

i - **i** hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge **nchung** khou khatnic **luaimei** hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	bin	bi
-	dik	hi
-	git	si

ii - hei **i** khwan saenghmei khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	tii *(give)*
-	-	kii *(kidney)*
-	-	sii *(bad)*

y - **y** hei **i** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan *(falling tone)* swna hy e.
y hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge, **nchung** khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	dym	by
-	hyng	dy
-	thyn	ry

o - **o** hei **kahouh** khou ***o, ov*** twna hy e, baihmei latkaeng kahouh khou hy mak ge.
o hei Ruanglat khwan **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou **o** hei hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	lo
-	-	tho
-	-	kho
-	-	cho

Thaylou nimei:

o, ov hei Ruanglat khou nai e, hy e. Tihkic katupna sinswmei kabiswmei latkaeng thu hamh e.

u - **u** hei **kahouh** khou ***u tho, ui*** twmei kumhmei khou na hy e.
u hei **nchung** khatnic **luaimei** khou hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
u	bung	nu
ui	khuk	hu
-	mun	lu

w - w hei **u** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan *(falling tone)* swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	dwm	bw
-	khwn	nw
-	lwn	sw

5.1.2 Diphthong Hymei (Vowel Kanei Kariumei Hymei)

a - **a** zamh diphthong hei **a+i** lev **a+u** na nai e.

a+i = ei

a lev **i** hy kariu pwkhou ***ei*** swna hy e.
Luaimei khou ***open final*** swna hy e,
kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	bei
-	-	gei
-	-	rei

a+y = ey

ey hei **ei** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	key
-	-	gey
-	-	rey

a+u = ou

a lev ***u*** hy kariu pwkhou ***ou*** khwan pat re, kumna ***ou*** swna hy e.

ou hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge.
Nchung khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou ***open final*** swna hy e, - ***kou, pou, tou***

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	bou
-	-	khou
-	-	sou

a+w = ow

ow hei **ou** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	bow
-	-	khow
-	-	sow

aa **aa** hei baihmei vowel lev hy kariu pwkhou **a** khatna hy e.
Kabangc khou hei zauc kho.

aa+i = ai

ai hei **kahouh** khou ***open initial*** swna ***ai*** twna hy e.
Baihmei khou **kahouhmei** *(initial)* swna hy mak ge.
Nchung khou hy e.
Luaimei khou ***open final*** swna hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
ai	laamh	kai
-	gaan	lai
-	zaap	pai

aa+y = ay

ay hei **ai** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou ***open final*** swna hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	gay
-	-	khay
-	-	may

aa+u = au.

aa+u hei hy kariu pwkhou **au** swna hy e.
au hei **kahouh** khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou ***open final*** swna hy e.-

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	bau
-	-	kau
-	-	lau

aa+w = aw

aw hei **au** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
Luaimei khou ***open final*** swna hy e, -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	daw
-	-	khaw
-	-	zaw

i **i+aa = ia**

ia hy kariumei hei -
Kahouh khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy mak ge.
ia hei **nchung** khou na hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	*pian*	-
-	*rian*	-
-	*sian*	-

Thaylou nimei -

Tihkic, ***hia, sia*** *twmei kumhmei ruph khwan khou saa e, hy nuh e.)*

i+u = iu

iu hei **kahouh** khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
iw hei **luaimei** khou ***open final*** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	biu
-	-	liu
-	-	piu

i+w = iw

iw hei **iu** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
iw hei **luaimei** khou na ***open final*** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	biw
-	-	hiw
-	-	liw

y **y+aa = ya**

ya hei **ia** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy mak ge.
ya hei **nchung** khou na hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	hyam	-
-	lyan	-
-	syang	-

u **u+aa = ua**

ua hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge.
luaimei khou ***nggua, kua, chua*** - mi kumhmei khou na hy e.
ua hei **nchung** khou na hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	guang	-
-	luang	-
-	ruang	-

w **w+aa = wa**

wa hei **ua** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **luaimei** khou hy mak ge.
wa hei **nchung** khou consonant kanei kak khou na hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	mwang	-
-	rwang	-
-	swang	-

u+i = ui
Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
ui hei **luaimei** khou ***open final*** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	dui
-	-	gui
-	-	pui

Thaylou khang:

ui hei saamei asaekc nai e, tihkic ***hui*** twmei lev khatna de, local accent de.)

u+y = uy

uy hei **ui** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan khou hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
uy hei **luaimei** khou ***open final*** swna hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	duy
-	-	guy
-	-	khuy

5.1.3 Triphthong Hymei (Vowel Kathumh Kariumei Khwan hymei)

Ruanglat khou vowel kathumh kariumei khwan **triphthong** kanei nai e - **iau** khatnic **uai** hei e. *(**w, y** final swmei hei tho **u, i** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan de).*

i+aa+u = iau

iau hei **kahouh** khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
iau hei **luaimei** khou na ***open final*** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	liau
-	-	khiauc
-	-	riau

i+aa+w = iaw

iaw hei **iau** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan swna hy e.
Kahouh khou khatnic **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
iaw hei **luaimei** khou na hy e. -

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	khiaw
-	-	miaw
-	-	riaw

u+aa+i = uai

uai hei **kahouh** khou hy mak ge, **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
uai hei **luaimei** khou na ***open final*** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	guai
-	-	luai
-	-	phuai

u+aa+y = uay

uay hei **uai** zamh bumkeymei khwangwan swna hy e.
Kahouh khou hy mak ge, **nchung** khou hy mak ge.
uay hei **luaimei** khou ***open final*** swna hy e.

Latkamv :-

initial	*medial*	*final*
-	-	khuay
-	-	luay
-	-	muay

5.2.0 Khwangwan Hymei (Tone Writing)

Vowel lev Consonant rui kabah naimei khwan (latkaeng) tipatmei kumcna Ruanglat khou tone rui latkaeng zamh kabah tipat re twmei hei kahu thangc ncham kan the. Kumna tone hei consonant, vowel hymei kumcna hy nina e. Ruanglat khou tone padeih nai e - (1) *level tone*, (2) *falling tone*, (3) *rising tone* khatnic (4) *glottalized tone* - mi guay hei e. Mi tone padeih khouhei *level tone* thu madanh mak ge. *Falling tone* ta **v** piuna madanc e, ***i***, ***u*** phaan ***y***, ***w*** piu e. *Rising tone* ta **c** piuna madanc e, khatnic *glottalized tone* ta **h** piuna madanc e. Mi guay hei kahu khou ncham kan the. Kumna mi tone guay hei hymei thiak kabangc khou lyanlou e.

(C = consonant, V = vowel, T = tone)

Structure	*Level tone*	*Falling tone*	*Rising tone*	*Glottalized tone*
CV+T	raa	rav	rac	rah
CV+T	ri	ry	ric	rih
CVV+T	gei	gey	geic	geih
CVV+T	riu	riw	riuc	riuh
CVV+T	zou	zow	zouc	zouh
CVC+T	bang	bangv	bangc	bangh
CVC+T	tan	tanv	tanc	tanh
CVVC+T	rian	ryan	rianc	rianh
CVVC+T	buan	bwan	buanc	buanh
CVVV+T	guai	guay	guaic	guaih
CVVV+T	riau	riaw	riauc	riauh

Mi hei howsi kumc e, tikic pac nlaanh dat mak khe, pac nlaanhmei rau the.

5.3.0 Nwkwang Khwan Hymei (Prenasal Sound Writing)

Ruanglat khou Nwkwang Khwan (prenasalized sound) rui latkaeng zamh kabah tipat re. Kumhpui zaengrui nwkwang khwan hei Ruanglat khou consonant, vowel hymei kumcna hy nina e. Nwkwang khwan hei khatna de, tihkic sound environment theilayna **m, n, ng** piuna hy e. Kumna Nwkwang Khwan hei akumhna hy cho twmei kabangc khou taleina lyanlou e.

(P = prenasalized sound, C = consonant, V = vowel, T = tone).

Structure	***Level tone***	***Falling tone***	***Rising tone***	***Glottalized tone***
CVT	raa	rav	rac	rah
P+CVT	nraa	nrav	-	nrah
CV+T	ri	ry	ric	rih
P+CVT	nri	-	nric	nrih
CVVT	gei	gey	geic	geih
P+CVVT	nggei	-	-	-
CVVT	zou	zow	zouc	zouh
P+CVVT	nzou	-	-	nzouh
CVCT	bang	bangv	bangc	bangh
P+CVCT	mbang	mbangv	-	mbangh
CVCT	tan	tanv	tanc	tanh
P+CVCT	ntan	ntanv	-	ntanh
CVVCT	rian	ryan	rianc	rianh
P+CVVCT	-	-	-	nrianh
CVVCT	buan	bwan	buanc	buanh
P+CVVCT	-	mbwan	-	-
CVVVT	guai	guay	guaic	guaih
P+CVVVT	ngguai	ngguay	-	ngguaih
CVVVT	-	-	-	-
P+CVVVT	-	nsiaw	-	-
	-	-	-	mpiauh
	-	khiaw	khiauc	khiauh

Thaylou nimei - Prenasalized hei **im, in, an** twna hy mak ge, **m n ng** swna hy e.

5.4.0 Consonant Hymei

5.4.1 Kahouhmei (Initials)

Ruanglat hymei khou Consonant 18 gut re. Mi Consonant guay hei **kahouh** *(initial)* khou hy ngam e.

Latkamv: -

p = ***p***at,	**ph** = ***ph***u,	**b** = ***b***ei,	**m** = ***m***ai;
t = ***t***at,	**th** = ***th***ing,	**d** = ***d***ui,	**n** = ***n***ap,
ch = ***ch***ai,	**s** = ***s***i,	**z** = ***z***ei,	**r** = ***r***ei,
l = ***l***at,	**k** = ***k***ai,	**kh** = ***kh***at,	**g** = ***g***ut,
ng = ***ng***am;	**h** = ***h***au		

5.4.2 Nchung (Medials)

Ruangmei *latkaeng* **nchung** (med) khou Consonant 18 hei hy ngam e.

Latkamv: -

p = ka***p***ah,	**ph** = ka***ph***ut,	**b** = ka**b**ai,	**m** = ka***m***ang;
t = cha***t***u,	**th** = cha***th***wan,	**d** = cha***d***aa,	**n** = cha***n***ui;
ch = ta***ch***at,	**s** = ta***s***ianc,	**z** = ma***z***ath,	
r = cha***r***ay	**l** = ma***l***aa,		
k = cha***k***at,	**kh** = ka***kh***anh,	**g** = cha***g***ou,	**ng** = cha***ng***uth;
h = ka***h***ei			

5.4.3 Luaimei (Finals)

Ruanglat khwan hamh ethei latkaeng **luailoumei** hiak (final) 6 nai e. Mi guay kiu thu **p, m, t, n k, ng** hei e.

Latkamv :-

p = na***p***,	**m** = pa***m***,
t = ta***t***,	**n** = ga***n***
k = ba***k***,	**ng** = na***ng***,

Thaylou nimei - *Ruanglat hymei khou g, b, d, l - mi consonant guay hei final/stop swna hy mak ge.*

5.4.4 Kahiak hy kariumei (Consonant Cluster)

Ruanglat khwan khou consonant hy kariumei khwan maek ge, consonant cluster maek ge.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Ruanglat hymei khou phoneme, tone, khatnic prenasalized sound hei kahiak duanclouna hy e. Tabui zaeng cho ?
2. Ruanglat hymei khou consonant kanei kak khou
   o nai e / maek ge
   e nai e / maek ge
   io nai e / maek ge
3. Ruanglat hymei khou *kahouh* khou, *nchung* khou khatnic *luaimei* khou
   ie nai e / maek ge
4. Prenasalized sound hei -
   im, in, an hy e / hy mak ge
   m, n, ng hy e / hy mak ge
5. Ruanglat hymei lwan khou hy suakpat ro -
   Latkamv :-

	level tone	*falling tone*	*rising tone*	*glot.tone*
a+i=	*ei*	*ey*	*eic*	*eih*
a+u	=	.....	.....	....
aa+i	=	.....	.....	....
aa+u	=	.....	.....	....
i+aa	=	.....	.....	....
u+aa	=	.....	.....	....
i+aa+u	=	.....	.....	....
u+aa+i	=	.....	.....	....

6. Ruanglat khwan khou consonant finals azuh nai bo? Tabui tabui tei cho?

6.0 LATKAENG KATHAIMEI

(Morphology)

Morphology tabui ta cho ?

Duina saa pwkhou, latkaeng kathaimei lwan ta **Morphology** twna thay e.

Khwandiu *(phoneme)* kanei, kathum khatnic mi khangsuangc geicna duanc kariuna kabah patmei latkaeng kasiamh e. Latkaeng hei swbakkey pwkhou nthyam liangmei kabah tii ngammei latkaeng kiak ta tei **morpheme** (latkiak) kaw e. 'Alauc' twmei latkaeng hei phoneme guay kariuna duanh tuang e. Mi tihei swbakkey dat pwkhou phoneme guay mphang e, tihkic kabah naimei latkiak thu mphang mak ge. 'Ravguangc' twmei latkaeng hei kalangv kanei swbakkey pwkhou 'Rav' twmei khat lev 'guangc' twmei khat mphang e. 'Rav' hei kabah naimei latkiak khat re ,'guangc' twmei hei nic kabah naimei latkiak khat re. Mi 'rav' lev 'guangc' hei swbakkey dat pwkhou mi nei tihei duancthaumei phoneme guay tei mphang e, tihkic kabah naimei langv thu mphang mak khe. Kumna, alauc, rav, guangc twmei guay hei Morpheme khat khat kiu the. **Kumna nthyam liangmei kabah naimei latkaeng kiak tatei Morpheme (latkiak) kaw e.**

Morpheme tihei second bracket rui raenglou e. **{alauc} {rav} {guangc}** mi kumna swlou ethei morpheme e twmei thay e.

Alauc, tachat, chaengkhaek twmei latkaeng hei syllable kanei kanei nai e. alauc, tachat, hei swbak dat nuh makmei latkaeng e, mi nei hei morpheme khat khat re. Changkhaek hei chaeng + khaek twmei kabah naimei latkiak kanei rui duanh tuang e, chaeng hei morpheme khat re, khaek hei morpheme khat re.

Latkamv khang :-

Morpheme khatnamei latkaeng

gan, mazah, padeih

Morpheme kanei rui duanhmei latkaeng

kai + thei = kaithei

nap + guy = napguy

lau + phunhmei = lauphunhmei

Morpheme kathumh rui duancthaumei latkaeng -

lau + kummei + kah	=	laukwmkac
ntiang + khianghmei + kakui	=	tiangkhiangkui
nap + kathanc + mun	=	napthancmun

Morpheme phungcpatmei, morpheme guay rui akumhna latkaeng duancpat tuang cho twmei khatnic latkaeng kathaimei lwan ta tei **Morphology** kaw e.

Kumna Morphology lwan khou hei Noun Categories, Verbal Categories khatnic Word Class twmei thu Parts of Speech hei kadai swmei e.

6.1.0 NOUN KIK

(Noun Categories)

6.1.1 KUIDUI (Gender)

Grammar khou Gender khaklanghmei hei ntumei nggaanvmei, kakui kaduic khatnic kakui kaduic kalangv thaymakmei twna kalwnlung swna kathai guang e.

Kathiulaa laamei ringhmei guay hei kakui lev kaduic nai ngam e. Ntaw hei kabangc khou hyloumei guay hei zauc kho.

meicpui	meicpu	sikui	siluh
tunac	nggaanv	ruaykui	ruayduic
guangh	mav	chakou	chabwam

Mi khou nang tabui howpat bo ? Latkaeng kanei kanei hy mpiangloumei hei reymei hei kakui zaat guay zanc e. Kaneimei latkaeng guay hei kaduic zaat guay zanc e.

(a) **Kaduic ta thaymei Noun latkaeng ta Masculine Gender law e.**

Latkamv: -

mpouh, pu, siluh, guaihchic, ruayduic - mi guay hei kaduic ta thaymei noun raana e.

Ruanglat khou kaduic ta thaymei noun khatnic pronoun latkaeng guay khou -ang -pu, -pou, -pouc, -luh, -chic, duic, -duc hei suffix swna haaplouna Masculine Gender ngguanh e.

(b) **Kakui ta thaymei noun latkaeng ta Feminine Gender kaw e.**

Latkamv:-

luh, pui, ruaykui, sinay, guaihkui.

Ruanglat khou kakui ta thaymei noun khatnic pronoun latkaeng guay khou -lu, -liu, -kui, -pui, -peic, -neic, -nay, - mikumhmei hei suffix swna haaplouna Feminine Gender ngguanh e.

(c) **Kakui ta nic kaduic ta nic saa nuhmei - thay kariumei noun latkaeng ta Common Gender kaw e.**

Latkamv: -

ngaasatna, pam, nruna, zauczihmei, alauc, mikumhmei guay e.

(d) **Kakui kaduic maekmei ta thaymei noun latkaeng ta Neuter Gender kaw e.**

Latkamv:-

thingbang, hypei, kai, latrik, football, - mikumhmei guay.

6.1.2 KASING LWAN (Numbers)

6.1.2.1 Kasing (Number)

Grammar kathaimei khou kasing khat ta thaymei noun ta singular number twna thay e. Kasing khat khangsuangc geic hianmei tithaymei noun ta Plural Number twna thay e. Mi hei grammar guay khou ncham e.

Ruanglat khou Number (Kasing) hei kabangc khou hyloumei kumcna zauc nuh e.

ai	nang	kamei
aney	nangney	kaney
aniu	nangniw	kaniw
aniw guay	nangniw guay	kaniw guay
Thingbang	guak	suc
Thingbang nei	guak nei	suc nei
Thingbang guay	guak guay	suc guay
	guaknunc guay	Sucnunc guay

Reymei latkaeng rian hei rui *kasing khat* ta tithay e. Kaneimei latkaeng rian hei rui *kasing kanei* ta tithay e, khatnic kathumhmei latkaeng rian hei rui *kathumh khatnic kathumh khangsuangc geic hianmei* ta tithay e. Padeihmei rian hei rui geihmei zamh geihmei (plural of plural) ta thay e.

Kumna Ruanglat khou number hei kathumh swna pat re. Mi guay kiu thu - **khat sing, kanei sing** khatnic **geih sing,** mi guay hei e.

(a) **Kasing khat, khatna ta tithaymei noun, pronoun ta Khat Sing** *(Singular Number)* **kaw e.**

Latkamv: - ai, kamei, nang, guaih, tingthai - mikumhmei hei e.

(b) **Kasing kanei ta tithaymei noun, pronoun ta Kanei Sing** *(Dual Number)* **twna kaw e.**

Latkamv:-

aney, kaney, nangney, guaih nei, tingthai nei - mikumhmei hei e.

(c) **Kasing kathumh khatnic kathumh khangsuangc geihmei ta Geih Sing** (PluralNumber) **kaw e.**

Latkamv:-

aniw, kaniw, nangniw, sucnunc, guaihnunc

(d) Mi na hamhna Ruanglat khou **plural** zamh **plural** nai e.

Ruanglat khou Plural zamh Plural nai e. Mi ti hei Geihmei Geih Sing kaw e.

Latkamv:-

aniw guay, zoucnunc guay

6.1.2.2 Kasingpav (Numeral)

(a) Kasingsing (Cardinal Numerals)

Kasing pahmei lwan ta **kasingsing** kaw e. Ruanglat khou kasingsing hei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna nai e. Kasingsing latbi (root) guay hei phay hamhmei baihmei guay thu khwanlangv (syllable) kanei kanei rui sw e. -

akhat, kanei, kathumh, padeih, panguh, charuk, chanei, tachat chakiu, aruh.

akhat, aruh, phay, aching, akhaa, apang, ngalang, atung, ngalung - twna nai e.

Ruanglat khou **Kasingsing** hei *akhat, aruh, phay* twlana *aching* tangc pwkhou kasingsing zanc kalaih e. Duina saa pwkhou ching tanghpui pum kazanc kalaih e. Mihei kabangc khou hyna nchinlou e.

akhat		=	1	=	1
aruh		=	10	=	10
phay		=	100	=	100
aching	1	=	chingkhat	=	1,000
aching	10	=	chingruh	=	10,000
aching	100	=	chingphay	=	100,000
akhaa	1	=	akhaakhat	=	1,000,000
akhaa	10	=	akhaaruh	=	10,000,000
akhaa	100	=	akhaaphay	=	100,000,000
apang	1	=	apangkhat	=	1,000,000,000
apang	10	=	apangruh	=	10,000,000,000
apang	100	=	apangphay	=	100,000,000,000
ngalang	1	=	ngalangkhat	=	1,000,000,000,000
ngalang	10	=	ngalangruh	=	10,000,000,000,000
ngalang	100	=	ngalangphay	=	100,000,000,000,000
atung	1	=	atungkhat	=	1,000,000,000,000,000
atung	10	=	atungruh	=	10,000,000,000,000,000
atung	100	=	atungphay	=	100,000,000,000,000,000
ngalung	1	=	ngalungkhat	=	1,000,000,000,000,000,000
ngalung	10	=	ngalungruh	=	10,000,000,000,000,000,000
ngalung	100	=	ngalungphay	=	100,000,000,000,000,000,000

Kasing pahmei thiak duancpatmei lwan hei kabangc khou hylou e,

1 = akhat,
2 = kanei,
3 = kathumh,
4 = padeih,
5 = panguh,
6 = charuk,
7 = chanei,
8 = tachat,
9 = chakiu,
10 = aruh

Aruh tangc ethei kasing **riak** akhat the. Kasing riak 1, hamh ethei kasing banv 1 twna kaw nuh e.

10 na 1 mbu = 11 mbu = 11 ruhkhat
10 na 2 mbu = 12 mbu = 12 ruhkanei
10 na 3 mbu = 13 mbu = 13 ruhkathumh

20 = achuih, nchuih
20 na 1 mbu = 21 mbu = 21 chuihkhat)
20 na 2 mbu = 22 mbu = 22 chuihkanei
20 na 3 mbu = 23 mbu = 23 chuihkathumh, ...

30 = tamruc
30 na 1 mbu = 31 mbu = 31 tamruckhat, ...

40 = kasing riak 4 = 40 = riakdei
(kasing 10 = kasing riak 1; kasing riak 4 = 10 x 4 = 40)

50 = riakngu, 60 = riakcharuk, 70 = riakchanei, 80 = riaktachat, 90 = riakchakiu

100 = phay, hamhethei, phay x akhat = phaykhat, 100 x kanei = 200 (phaynei), 100 x kathumh =300 (phaythumh), 400 = phaypadeih, 500 = phaypanguh, 600 = phaycharuk

(b) Kathaek Sing (Ordinal Numerals)

Kabamv, kathaek lev kariang naina saamei, hymei sing ta **Kathaek Sing** kaw e. Mihei latkaeng swna nic hy e, kasing lev latkaeng kariuna nic hy e.

Latkamv :-

reymei	= 1mei
kaneimei	= 2mei
aruhmei	= 10mei
achuihmei	= 20mei
phaymei	= 100mei

Kamei reymei position khou pass sw the.
Zianthayliu lauluang pakmei khou position 100mei khou guang e.

(c) Kariu Sing (Aggregative Numerals)

Ruanglat khou kasing saa kariumei, chak kariumei ta **Kariu Sing** twna kaw e. Mitei *kaguayna, kapwmna, -na, -meina, -mei* twmei latkaeng guay hei haaplouna saa e.

Latkamv :-

Ntumei *kaguayna* now hamh e.
Meic *kapwmna* thay khang kage nai e.
Nangney gaanv*neimeina* ta kagit pwni.
Guaih *kathumhmei* zayguang ngam o.

(d) Kiaklei Sing (Fractional Numerals)

Ruanglat khou kapwm khourui kakiak kalei patna kadam, kachaengc chakmei latkaeng ta **Kiaklei Sing** twna kaw e. Kiaklei Sing hei saa khou kasing tei saapat nimei hu khou ***patmei khou*** hamhethei ***khou*** sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

kadam aruh *patmei khou* akhat (1/10), kadam aruh *khou* akhat
kasing tachat *patmei khou* panguh (5/8), kasing tachat *khou* panguh
kanei *patmei khou* akhat (1/2), kanei *khou* akhat

(e) Liang Sing (Multiplicative Numerals)

Ruanglat singchak khou taanc dat dat, saa dat dat, pac dat dat twmei ti hei chak khang **liang** hei sinsw e. Aniw rui *taanc liang kathumh, saa liang padeih* twna saa e. Kumna mi tihei **Liang Sing** twna kaw e. Mi hei English khou *times* lev nchamc e. Liang hei kasing hu khou saa e.

Latkamv :-

Kamei tingmik khou nap tu *liang* kanei kanei e	= = 1	x	liang 2
Aruh aruh pac *liang* panguh e	= 10	x	*liang* 5
Gaanvthumh rui phaic *liang* kathumh kathumh e	= 3	x	liang 3
Nruay aruh khang kataek gy *liang* kanei kanei e	= 10	x	*liang* 2

(f) Kagei Sing (Approximative numerals)

Kasing nthanna thay makmei, tihkic kagei thu thay rahraana saa nuhmei sing ta **Kagei Sing** kaw e. Mi kumhmei sing ta saa khou kasing tangv tei ***gei, dou, dougei, mbu*** twna saa e.

Latkamv :-

Kasing tei ningtow makkhe, tihkic 150 *gei* khou e.
Haubungc aruh *dou* karaana tu ngam kan de.
Laupuk khou guaih panguh *dougei* pat re.
Sibai meic phaykhat *mbu* guang e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Gender tabui ta cho ? Ruanglat khou gender zaat azuh nai cho. Kazanc hy o.
2. Ruanglat khou Masculine Gender khou tabui tabui suffix swlou tu cho? Hy o.
3. Ruanglat khou Feminine Gender khou tabui tabui suffix swlou cho? Hy o.
4. Ruanglat khou Number azuh nai cho ? Hyna dinc o khatnic latkamv kathumh kathumh hyna nchin o.
5. Gaatmei twn Number (singular, plural, dual) hylou o.

   ai _____ aniu _____

   kaney _____ kaniw guay._____

   guak _____ sucnunc guay _____

   Thingbang _____ thingbang guay _____
6. Gaatmei twn Gender (masculine, feminine, neuter) hylou o.
   kakui _____; kanay _____; kaluh _____;
   chaphwmmei khangc_____ ; gaanv _____;
   guakluh _____; pouh _____;

7. Ruanglat khou kasing akumhna saa cho, hy cho? Latkamv khat khat hy o.

(a) Kasing sing .....

(b) Kathaek sing .....

(c) Kagei sing .....

(d) Kiaklei sing .....

(e) Kariu sing .....

(f) Liang sing .....

6.1.3 MEIC (Person)

Meic *(Person)* twmei hei grammar guay khou kathai e. Meic twmei thu ai, nang, kamei twmei zaat tihei meic twna thay e twna duina saa nuh e. Lai baih baihmei kumc Ruanglat khou **Meic** *(Person)* hei kathumh nai muay e. Mi guay kiu thu **Reymei Mei** (First Person), **Kaneimei Mei** (Second Person) khatnic Kathumhmei Mei (Third Person), miguay hei e.

(1) Reymei Mei (First Person)

Khat Sing khou	-	ai,
Kanei Sing khou	-	aney,
Geih Sing khou	-	aniw, aniu

(2) Kaneimei Mei (Second Person)

Khat Sing khou	-	nang,
Kanei Sing khou	-	nangney,
Geih Sing khou	-	nangniw,

(3) Kathumhmei Mei (Third Person)

Khat Sing khou	-	kamei
Kanei Sing khou	-	kaney
Geih Sing khou	-	kaniw

6.1.4 CASE

Case tabui cho ? Case twmei hei noun, pronoun lev verb kak khou **alamv bammei lwnlung** tatei e.

Kamei hypei rui tatdyn hy e. Mi latrian khouhei 'hy e' hei verb e. Thow rui hy cho Thanv ethei 'kamei' twna daw pwni. Tabui hy tuang cho thanv ethei 'tatdyn' twna daw pwni. Tabui rui hy tuang cho thanv ethei 'hypei rui' twna daw pwni. Kumna 'hy e' twmei verb lev kamei, tatdyn, hypei twmei noun, pronoun guay hei lev kariang khat nai bam e. Mi kumhmei alamvmei lwnlung ti hei grammar khou CASE kaw e.

Latrian lungc khou tei Noun hamhethei Pronoun lev Verb kak khou alamvmei lwnlung naimei tatei Case kaw e.

Case kazaat azuh nai cho, zauc kho.

(a) Agentive Case:

Agentive Case tabui tei cho ? Mihei thay gay khang kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

Latrian	***Thanvmei***	***Dawmei***
Ai rui mitei hy tuang e.	Thow rui hy tuang cho ?	Ai rui
Kata thay ny zauc o.	Thow rui zauh khang ?	Nang rui (Limhmei)
Kabi rui mitei gay mec twna saa e	Thow rui saa ?	Kabi rui
Kamei gaypui mei e.	Thow cho gaypui mei ?	Kamei

Tiiloubammei latrian guay khouhei thow rui verb zamh taanv guay tei taancpat tuang cho thanv pwkhou latdaw swna *ai, nang, Kabi, kamei* twmei noun guay, pronoun guay hei kachak pat re. Mi guay hei verb zamh subject raana e. Mi kumcna latdaw swna kachakpatmei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta **Agentive Case** kaw e.

Thow rui verb zamh taanv taancpat tu cho twna thanv pwkhou latdaw swna kachakpatmei Verb zamh subject swbammei noun hamhethei pronoun zamh case ta Agentive Case kaw e.

Hamhethei,

Noun hamhethei pronoun ta verb zamh subject swna piu ethei mi tei Agentive Case e twna thay e.

Agentive Case khou noun, pronoun tangv rui subject guang e, *rui* phaan *tei, tei rui, thu, mu, nic* guangmei nai e, ramh khatsihnic guangmakmei nic nai nuh e.

(b) Objective Case

Objective Case tabui tei cho ? Mihei thay gay khang kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

Latrian	***Thanvmei***	***Dawmei***
(a) Lanzaipou ta kaw o.	Thow ta kaw o tu bo ?	Lanzaipou ta
(b) Ai kamei ta thay e	Thow ta thay bo?	Kamei ta
(c) Hypei tei tii o	Tabui tii o tu bo ?	Hypei tei
(d) Ai alauc ta nap titu e	Thow ta titu cho ? Tabui titu cho ?	alauc ta nap

Karuc khou latrian guay khou hei verb rui saatow bammei hei thow ta cho, tabui ta cho, twna thanv pwkhou latrian guay khou hei rui noun hamhethei pronoun khat kachakpat re. Kachakpat bammei noun hamhethei pronoun ta tei transitive verb zamh object kaw e, kumna mikumhmei object sw bammei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Objective Case twna kaw e.

Transitive verb zamh object twmei thu verb rui tithay bammei tei thow ta cho, tabui ta cho thanv pwkhou dawmei latkaeng kachakpatmei noun hamh ethei pronoun zamh case ta Objective Case kaw e.

Hamhethei,

Noun hamh ethei pronoun ta verb zamh object swna piu ethei mi tei Objective Case (hamhethei Accusative Case) twna thay e.

Objective Case zamh object swmei noun, pronoun tangv - ta, tei guang e baihmei - mu, thu nic guang nuh e.

(c) Instrumental Case:

Instrumental Case tabui ta cho? Thay gay khang kabangc khou hyloumei latrian hei zauc kho.

(a) Kamei katan rui tat re.

(b) Gaylaapou baeng rui thing dow e.

(c) Dymreyliu mpinh rui phey hui e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei katan rui, baeng rui, mpinh rui twmei latkaeng guay hei verb rui tithaymei taanv taancpatmei khou naatnu, baansin swna sinsw e.

Baansin swna, naatnu swna sinswmei noun, pronoun zamh case ta Instrumental Case kaw e.

Instrumental Case khou baansin, naatnu swna piumei noun, pronoun tangv 'rui' guang e.

(d) Dative Case:

Dative Case tabui ta cho ? Mi hei thay gay khang kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

Latrian	*Thanvmei*	*Dawmei*	*Thow laatow*
(a) Ai Kailaagai khou hypei tii e	Thow khou tii ?	Kailaagai khou	Kailaagai
(b) Mi tei Azin khou saa o	Thow khou saa khang?	Azin khou	Azin
(c) Ai kakhou syan tii e	Thow khou tii ?	kakhou	kamei
(d) Tatdyn tei Kasangay khou tii kan e.	Thow khou tiilou kan ?	Kasangay khou	Kasangay

Tiilou bammei latrian guay khatnic thanvmei, dawmei khourui thaymei hei verb rui taanpatmei taanv hei ramh khat tiipatmei kabac khat ndauh e - meic tei thow khou cho twna thanv pwkhou - Kailaagay khou, Azin khou, kakhou, Kasangay khou twna dawmei hei kachakpat re. Khou rui - tii bammei ramh khat/puatc guay tei laatow bammei tei Kailaagay, Azin, Kamei, Kasangay - hei e. Mi kumhmei noun, pronoun ta Dative Case khou bam e twna thay e.

Verb rui ramh khat tiimei kabac ndauhpatmei khou laatow bammei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Dative Case kaw e.

Dative Case zamh noun, pronoun tangv 'khou' guang e.

Latkamv:-

Kailaagay khou, Azin khou, kakhou, Kasangay khou - mikumhmei hei e.

(e) Ablative Case:

Ablative Case tabui tei cho ? Kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zauc lana kathai kho.

Latrian	***Thanvmei***	***Dawmei***
(a) Ai puatc tei kai thangc rui phungc guang tuang e.	Puatc tei tabui thangc rui phung guang bo ?	Kai khou rui
(b) Ai kakhou rui syan mphang e	Syan tei thow khou rui tiipat/tatpat?	Kakhou rui
(c) Guloupou rui hypei tei kakai thu rui laa guang e.	hypei tei tabui thangc rui	Kakai khou rui
(d) Kadailiu rui kapammei khou rui phei laa e	Phey tei thow khou rui	kapammei khou rui

Latrian guay khou hei - thanvmei, dawmei guay hei zauc pwkhou thaymei tho - kai khourui, kakhourui, kakai khourui, kapammei khourui twmei noun, pronoun guay khourui puat tatpatmei/tiipatmei zamh bamv dinc e. Mi kumhmei noun, pronoun ta Ablative Case khou bammei twna thay e.

Ramh khat tatpat kanmei/tiipat kanmei bamv dinhmei noun and pronoun zamh case to Ablative Case kaw e.

Ablative Case zamh noun lev pronoun tangv ***'khourui, thangcrui,*** guang e.

Latkamv: -

kai khourui, treasury thangcrui - mikumhmei hei e.

(f) Genetive Case

Genetive Case tabui ta cho ? Kabangc khou latrian guay hei zaucna kathai kho.

(a) Mi tei atuang phey e.

(b) Mi hei nang tuang latrik ge.

(c) Mi hei katuang syan e.

(d) Syan zamh gunc thu meic guayna thay e.

(e) Lata zamh nuhgaymei khwan tei nking nii e.

(f) Tingsei zamh nchumei tei akhang thu gay e.

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei 'atuang, nang tuang, katuang, zamh' - twmei guay hei kaipouc dinhmei latkaeng raana e. Mi kumhmei noun khatnic pronoun ta Genetive Case khou bammei twna kaw e.

Ramh akhat zamh kaipouc thaymei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Genetive Case kaw e.

Genetive Case zamh noun khatnic pronoun tangv 'tuang, zamh' guang e.

Genetive Case khou bammei noun zamh noun hei khwangwan kalaih e - tone shift sw e.

(i) Genetive case khou **glottalised tone** hei **rising tone** khou kalaih e.
Chah hei **chac** twna khwangwan shift sw e.
Chini **chac** zangv e. Chahnuy **chac** zangvgay e.
Nriangcluangcmei **chac** zangvgay chuy e.

Zouh hei **zouc** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Napnaeng **zouc** zangvgay e.
Martha kai **zouc** ndeih e.

(ii) Genetive case khou **rising tone** hei **level tone** khou kalaih e.

Zouc hei **zou** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Khow**zou** meic ta ndev e.
Laulaih **zou** nrak ge.
Suc hei **su** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Kaidaeng **su** nrak ge.
Khowraamv **su** kangaengv nraeng e.

(iii) Noun khou bammei glottalised tone guay adjective hamh ethei verb ngguanh pwkhou rising tone khou kalaih e.

Kai **daih**mei hei **daic** e.
Nap **geih**mei hei **geic** e.
Taanv **taanhmei** nunc **taanc** e.
Puatc **phunghmei** nunc rui **phungc** e.

(iv) Prefix swna **ram** khatnic **karam** haaplouna noun hamh ethei adjective ngguanh pwkhou tone kaguayna level tone khou raana kalaih e.

daihmei hei **ramdai** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Mi guak **ramdai** kumhmei ai howlou mak ge.

suhmei hei **ramsu** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Mai chuapmei **ramsu** khaengvlou khang thay mak ge.

zow hei **ramzou** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Dui **ramzou** nthaek zat mak ge.

geihmei hei **karamgei** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Karamgei tei saa ngam mak ge.

daihmei hei **karamdai** twna khwangwan kalaih e.
Karamdai tei kachav simei ramdai kumc e.

zow hei **karamzou** twna khwangwan kalaih e
Karamzou tei zow katumc hak e.

(g) Locative Case

Locative Case tabui ta cho ?

Kabangc khou latrian asaekc tiiloumei hei zaucna kathai kho.

(a) Ai school tho tat pwni.
(b) Paeng ruc khou hypei nai e.
(c) Phey tei khuk khou lou o.
(d) Ai khuangh khat khou guang pwni.

Latrian guay khou naimei school khou, ruc khou, khuk khou, twmei hei rui verb rui taancpatmei taanv bamv tei ndauh e. 'khat khou' twmei rui kaganv ta ndauh e. Mi kumhmei noun khatnic pronoun ta Locative Case khou bammei kaw e.

Verb rui taancpatmei taanv bamv, kaganv ndauhmei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Locative Case kaw e.

Locative Case zamh noun khatnic pronoun tangv '***khou, tho, twn***'guang e.

(h) Vocative Case

Vocative Case tabui cho ?

Mihei kathai gay khang kabangc khou latrian asaekc hylou e. Mihei zauc rey kho.

(a) Apouc le, tabui tho tat khang cho ?
(b) Abungna tei, khou hei guang o
(c) Apuai, nkhwan o.
(d) Alauc nunc thiu, saasi riu
(e) Alu nunc thiu, dungckey o, dungckey o.
(f) Apulauc, bamv khoutei dungckey o.

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei 'apouc, abungna, apuai, alauc nunc, alu nunc, apulauc - twmei latkaeng guay hei 'kawmei' thaymei latkaeng raana e. Mikumhmei noun khatnic pronoun ta Vocative Case khou bammei kaw e.

Khat rui khat ta 'kawmei' ta thaymei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta Vocative Case kaw e.

Kumna karuc khou kathai keymei guay khou rui thay the - mikiu thu Ruanglat khou case tachat nai e. mi case tachat zanc tei kabangc khou hylou e.

Case zanc	***Case tangv guangmei latkaeng/suffix***
(1) Agentive case	rui
(2) Objective case	ta, tei
(3) Instrumental case	rui
(4) Dative case	khou
(5) Ablative case	khourui
(6) Genetive case	tuang, zamh
(7) Locative case	tho, thangc, khou
(8) Vocative case	le, thiu, tei

KATHAIDWAN

1. Case tabui ta cho ? Case kazaat azuh nai cho ? Kazanc guay hy o.
2. Gaatmei twn hylou o.
   (a) Latrian lungc khou noun hamh ethei pronoun lev verb kak khou _____ lwnlung ta tei case kaw e.
   (b) Noun hamh ethei pronoun ta verb zamh subject swna piu ethei mi ta tei _____ khou bammei twna thay e.
   (c) Noun hamh ethei pronoun ta verb zamh object swna piu ethei mi tei _____ khou bammei twna thay e.
3. Instrumental case tabui cho. Latkamv khang latrian kathumh hylana dinc o.
4. Duina daw o.
   (a) Dative case khou noun hamh ethei pronoun tangv _____guang e.
   (b) Ablative case khou noun hamh ethei pronoun khou rui ramh khat tiipat/tatpatmei ta dinc e. Ablative case katangv khou mi hei kumcna hy e.
   tho / khou / ta / khourui
   (c) Ramh akhat zamh kaipouc thaymei noun khatnic pronoun zamh case ta _____ kaw e.
5. Tabui tabui tei cho ? Duina hy suak pat ro.
   (a) Locative Case.....
   (b) Vocative Case.....

6.2.0 VERB KIK
(Verbal Categories)

6.2.1 GANV (Tense)

Lat kathaimei khou **ganv** hei nthukmei khat re. Kaganv thei layna aniw lat hei kalaihpat-gut re. Latrian khat saapat pwkhou kaganv lev kariang nai e.

Tense twmei hei Latinlat **tempus** twmei khourui e, kabah thu **ganv** (time) twtuang e. Grammar khou tense kathaimei hei kaganv ta kathai tuang hamh e, kaganv thei layna lat akumhna saa cho twmei kathai tuang e. Kumna kaganv lev kariang naina lat kathaimei **'ganv'** ta tei grammar khou **tense** kaw e.

Mi **ganv** lev **lat** hei kabangc khou hyloumei kumcna zauc nuh e.

Kamei minute panguh **hu** khou guanglou khwan e,
ntaw kamei bam mak ge,
minute panguh **tangv** guang dat pwni.

Ntaw **hu**	**Ntaw**	Ntaw **tangv**
minute 1	**O**	minute 1
tatkan ganv	**ntaw ganv**	**guangni ganv**
(past time)	*(present time)*	*(future time)*

Ntaw twn hei ding lana ntaw **hu**, **ntaw** khatnic ntaw **tangv** lat guay tei aniw rui saa e.

Kumna karuc khouhei ganv zaat kathumh how e - ntaw, ntaw hu, ntaw tangv. Mi ganv guay ti hei grammar khou tense kaw e. English Grammar khou ganv hei **verb** swna nai e. Ruanglat khou thu verb tangv latkaeng baihmei haap guang e.

Ganv hei kazaat kathumh nai e - **ntaw ganv** (present tense), **tatkan ganv** (past tense), khatnic **guangni ganv** (future tense).

Kabangc khou tiiloumei ganv theilayna aniw akumhna lat saa cho twmei zauc kho.

Present Tense (Ntaw Ganv)

Khat Sing	*Kanei Sing*	*Geih Sing*
Ai tu e	Aney tu e	Aniu tu e

Past Tense (Tatkan Ganv)

Khat Sing	*Kanei Sing*	*Geih Sing*
Kamei tu khwan e	Kaney tu khwan e	Kaniw tu khwan e

Future Tense (Guangni Ganv)

Nang tu pwni e	Nangney tu pwni e	Nangniw tu pwni e
Ai tu lak ge	Kamei tu pwlak ge	kaniw tu pwlak ge

Englishlat khou tense rui verb ta kalwn tikalaihpat-gut re. English latrian khou Third Person Singular Number rui subject sw ethei verb lwn kalaih e. Karuc khou tense kathaimei khou hei aniw rui thay e twmei thu Ruanglat khou tense khatnic person rui verb **'tu'** tihei kalwn tikalaih mak ge,**'tu'** hei **'tu'** muay bam e. Tikic, ***e* hei *khwan e, pwni e, pwlak ge*** rui lyn e.

Mi khourui aniw thay e twmei thu tense khou Ruanglat hei main verb **'tu'** kalaih mak ge, **'e'** nic kalaih mak ge, tihkic latkaeng baihmei khat khat **'khwan'** hei past tense, khatnic **'pwni, pwlak,'** hei future tense khou sinsw e.

Tense tihei **simple, continuous, perfect, perfect continuous** twna English grammar khou kathai e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Tense(ganv) tabui ta cho? Tense kazaat azuh nai cho?
2. Kabangc khou tiiloumei tense guay hei sinswna nang rui kahawmei latrian khat khat hy lana nchin o.
   (a) Present Tense .....
   (b) Past Tense .....
   (c) Future Tense .....
3. Tatkan Ganv tabui ta cho? Tatkan Ganv ta tabui latkaeng rui tithay cho?
4. Guangni Ganv tabui ta cho? Tabui latkaeng rui Guangni Ganv ta tithay cho?
5. Tense(ganv) tihei English Grammar khou padeih tipatna kathai e. Tabui tabui tei cho ?

6.2.2 ASPECT

Kalwnlung ncham guangmei grammar khou **aspect** twmei verb lwnlung tihei grammar zamh category khat swna kathai mak ge, ganv (tense) lwn dinhmei khou kazauhmei thiak khat swna ning bam khwan e. Aspect tihei reymei khou Germanlat, Russialat khatnic Europeanlat asaekc zamh grammar khou kathai kahouh khwan e. Thaurey douc thu aspect hei verb rui tithaymei kabah tei 'nthuihna ndauh patmei' khatnic 'nthuihna ndauh makmei' , mi kumcna kabiak kanei khou kathaimei ta aspect kaw bam khwan e. Aseicdou thu tidaic patna **tense** khangsuangc **aspect** hei gaeng mbumei grammatical category khat swna ranvna kathai bam e. Kadai swna Tibeto-Burman Language guay khou tense khangsuangc aspect hei kadai sw hian e twna lat kathai kariangmei nunc rui laa e.

Aspect tabui tei cho ?

Tense hei lat lev ganv kariang naina kathaimei verb lwnlung ndauhmei latkaeng tatei e twmei hei tense khatnic tense piumei lam kathai khou thay kan the. **Aspect hei verb lwnlung ta ndauh e.** English lat khou **tense** theilayna verb kalaih e - verb latkaeng kalaih e. Tihkic Ruanglat thu **tense** theilayna verb kalaih mak ge, verb **lwn-gwan** theilayna latkaeng asaekc haap nkuan guang e. Kumna ramh khat, taanv khat sw **e,** sw **the,** sw **bam e,** sw **pwni** twmei **verb zamh lwn-gwan ta tei Aspect kaw e.**

Tense kathaimei khou ganv kathumh - **ntaw ganv, tatkan ganv** khatnic **guangni ganv** twna tipat re. Verb khat rui taancpatmei taanv zauc pwkhou taanv tei taancpat khou gutmei ganv khat nai e. Taanv tei taancpat bammei ganv lungc khou taanv tei akumhna taancpat cho twmei dinhmei tatei mi verb zamh aspect kaw e. **Kumna aspect hei tabui cho twmei ding khang tense kathumh hei lev kariang maek ge, tihkic verb taanv tei tabui lwn-gwan khou sw bam tu cho twmei tei e. Duina saa pwkhou Aspect hei tho verb rui taancpatmei taanv khou ndauhpat bammei lwn-gwan tei e.** Aspect hei ramhkhat sw patmei lwn tei ramhkhat swpatmei ganvdyng tei lev kariang nai nic nuh e, maek nic nuh e.

Kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) Neihmik neihpat tho pat re.
(b) Kamei guang the.
(c) Sikamliu latrik pac bam e.
(d) Kamei Delhi tat pwni.

(a) latrian khou 'pat re' twmei verb hei rui Neih taanv hei tingmik pum patmei taanv e twmei ndauh e. Kumna 'pat re' twmei verb zamh aspect hei **tingmik pum patmei chalahmei aspect** ge.

(b) latrian khou 'guang the' twmei verb hei rui kamei guangmei taanv tei nthuihna taanc kan the twmei hei ndauh e, kumna mi verb zamh aspect hei **taanv nthuih kanmei aspect** ge.

(c) latrian khou 'pac bam e' twmei verb hei rui Sikamliu rui pahmei taanv hei tatkey bam e twmei ndauh e, kumna mi hei nthuih khang gaatmei, **tatkey bammei aspect** ge.

(d) latrian khou 'tat pwni' hei ntaw khang swna taancpat makmei, katangv khou taancpat pwnimei ta ndauh e. Kumna mi hei taancpat changh makmei,**taancpat pwnimei aspect** ge.

Karuc khou latrian padeih khou hei aspect lwnlung tei zauc kho.

Latrian	*Aspect*	*Aspect lwnlung (verb zamh kabah)*
Neihmik neihpat tho pat re.	Simple Aspect	Chalahmei, kalwnlung swmei
Sikamliu latrik pac bam e	Progressive Aspect	Tatkey bammei, luai makmei
Kamei guang the	Perfect Aspect	Nthuih kanmei
Aniu nthuanh Delhi tat pwni.	Unrealised Aspect	Taancpat makmei, pwnimei

Karuc khou tiiloumei latkamv padeih khouhei rui thaymei tho aspect hei tabui cho twmei hei verb lwn-gwan khou zauc lana ding tuang e twmei hei e.

6.2.2.1 ASPECT ZAAT

Ruanglat khou verb lwnlung hei latkaeng khat kanei kariuna ndauh e. Mi kumhmei haap nkuan guangmei latkaeng tihei aspect twna thay e. Ruanglat khou kabi swmei aspect padeih nai e. Mi guay tei kabangc khou hylou e.

(a) Simple Aspect

Mi hei chalahna, kanaamv swmei, khatnic kalwnlung khang nchumhmei latrian khat swna saapatmei latbamv ta e. Mi kumhmei tihei Simple Aspect kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Neihpat tho neih pat **re**.

(b) Niangzay khwan ta nzian **e**.

(c) Tignzinthw tingzyn chaeng rah **e**.

Simple Aspect latrian hei '**e**' rui luailou e.

(b) Progressive Aspect

Taancna bammei, tatkey bammei kabac ndauhmei verb lwnlung ta Progressive Aspect twna kaw e.

Latkamv -

(a) Kamei latrik pac **bam e.**

(b) Thingtwan thu ngauh sauc **bam e.**

(c) Mazahsinpou zip **bam di he.**

Progressive Aspect latrian hei **bam e, bam di he** rui luailou e.

(c) Perfect Aspect:

Kaganv asaekc hu thangc rui nthuih lana ntaw nganv mitei nai bammei kabac ndauhmei verb zamh aspect ta Perfect Aspect kaw e.

Latkamv

(a) Kamei film tei zauc **the.**

(b) Alauc tei parikha pass sw **the.**

(c) Kalat tei ai thay **the.**

Perfect Aspect latrian hei **'the'** rui luailou e.

(d) Unrealized Aspect

Kaganv asaekc tangv pat nimei, sw nimei, guang nimei ta **Unrealised Aspect** twna thay e.

(a) Kamei Ngaanh Ngai khou guang **pwni.**

(b) Aniu nthuanh Delhi tat **pwni.**

(c) Neidak khat tangv result saapat **pwni.**

Unrealised Aspect latrian hei **'pwni'** rui luailou e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Aspect twmei hei tabui cho? Aspect lev tense khiannahmei tabui tabui tei cho?
2. Aspect zaat azuh nai cho? Kazaat guay zanc khat khat swna hy o.
3. 'Tat' verb hei sinswna Simple Aspect, Perfect Aspect Progressive Aspect, khatnic Unrealized Aspect latrian khat khat hy o.

4. Kabangc khou latrian guay khou verb guay khouhei tabui tabui Aspect nai cho? Hyna dinc o.

   (a) Nang doulaaneic guangmei ganv khoutei thu ai taanv taanc chadi bam heh.

   (b) Kamei tingmik pum nchamkai tat re.

   (c) Nang lat tei ai thay the.

   (d) Kamei adaeng khou nthuanh guang pwni.

   (e) Alauc tei khuangh nei taliclou khwan e.

6.2.3 KWM (Mood)

Mood hei Latinlat **modus** twmei khourui e. Kabah thu kathiak twtuang e. Grammar khou verb rui tithay patmei action kazauhmei lungning rui ningmei, ndauhpatmei kathiak kagwan (mode, manner) tatei **Mood** kaw e. Ruanglat khou **Kwm** kaw e.

English Grammar khou Mood zaat kathumh nai e. - Indicative Mood, Imperative Mood khatnic Subjunctive Mood - mi guay hei e.

Ruanglat khou Mood hei kazaat panguh nai e. Mi guay kiu thu -

(1) Thanvmei Mood,

(2) Thouhmei khatnic Zaenghuaymei Mood,

(3) Lungning rui Kahawmei Ndaumei Mood,

(4) Kage Naimei Swmak Nuhmakmei Mood,

(5) Suai pwlak ge, sw pwng de twna ndauhmei Mood.

(a) Thanvmei Mood

Latthanv khat lungc khou lungning rui kahawmei tei kaphumhlouna thanvmei lattahnv guay ta **Thanvmei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv: -

(a) Ding kadailou nuh pwni ny ?	(Ding kadaimei ta kahawna saamei)
(b) Dungckeyloumei gay pwni ny ?	(Dungckeymei ta kahawna saamei)
(c) Phey hei laa khang nuh tha ?	(Phey tei kahawna saamei)
(d) Nap hei tuthau nuh tha ?	(Nap tuthau niina saamei)

(b) Thouhmei khatnic Zaenghuaymei Mood

Lat thouhmei, taanv thouhmei, chakhuang swna saamei khatnic meic baihmei ta zaenghuayna saamei verb zamh mood ta **Thouhmei khatnic Zaenghuaymei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv: -

(a) Thingkhuk hei kakhaeng o.

(b) Gut maihna dungc o.

(c) Bamv khou guang dungclou o.

(d) Zouhbuangc hei puanclou o.

(c) Lungning rui Kahawmei Ndauhmei Mood

Suaihiamloumei, meic khat ta gay kan diuc, sii kandiuc, ryanraa kandiuc, amanv kan diuc twna ningna ndauhpatmei verb zamh mood tatei **Lungning rui Kahawmei Ndauhmei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv:-

(a) Ravguangc rui nang ta nduanghlou diuc o.

(b) Aseic khourui neihlaana lungc tho de.

(c) Nang mu theic nuangc theic zaic pwng e .

(d) Ai aseic kata ariu nii e.

(e) Mitei gay pwng the twna ning e.

(d) Kage naimei, Swmak Nuhmakmei Ndauhmei Mood

Swmak nuhmak khe, kage rap di the twna ningna ndauhmei khou sinswmei verb zamh mood ta **Kage naimei, Swmak Nuhmakmei Ndauhmei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv -

(a) Aseic nang kai guangtangh mak nuh mak khe.

(b) Mi lam tei nang thay nthan khang sw nina the.

(c) Parikha tei nang kazauh mak nuh mak ge.

(d) Lungcgay me ning ethei taanv taanc ranv nina e.

(e) Nang kata nthuanh ariu nina e.

(e) Makumhgaymei Mood

Suai ni tu hamh e, sw pwng de, kum pwng e twna ningmei ndauhmei verb zamh mood ta **Makumhgaymei Mood** kaw e.

Latkamv -

(a) Mareihbwan aseic guang pwng the.

(b) Kabigay parikha pass sw pwng de.

(c) Aseic mian tho nang zawpaw pwng the.

(d) Bw luai pwkhou syan mphang pwng e.

(e) Kamei latpiumei nac sw pwni twmei ai lwmgay e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Mood twmei hei tabui ta cho ? Kabah tabui cho ?
2. English Grammar khou Mood zaat azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui tei cho ?
3. Ruanglat Grammar khou Mood zaat azuh nai cho ? Tabui tabui tei cho ?
4. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei tabui tabui Mood khou cho ?
   (a) Ding kadailou nuh pwni bo ? _____
   (b) Thingkhuk hei kakhaeng o. _____
   (c) Ravguangc rui nang ta nduanghlou diuc o. _____
   (d) Nang kata nthuanh ariu nina e. _____
   (e) Mareihbwan aseic guang pwng the. _____

6.3.0 LATSAV NAATNU

(Word Class - Parts of Speech)

Latsav Naatnu (Parts of Speech) tabui ta cho?

Latrian khat khou nthukmei langv tei subject lev predicate sw lana latkaeng azuh haap nkuan lana latrian tihei tisaengcpat re, kumna latkaeng guay hei kataanv khat khat taanc bam e. Latkaeng guay hei rui taanc bammei taanv khatnic kabah ta zauc lana latkaeng guay ta kakang kakang tibaicpat re. Mi kang tihei **Latsav Naatnu - Parts of Speech** twna kaw e. Parts of Speech zanc hei kabah khou khatnic latkaeng rui taanc bammei taanv theilayna phuaklou tuang e. Mihei kalwnlung swna tatguang the.

Lat khat zamh latriak (grammar) dinh khang rui latsav naatnu zanc guay hei phuaklou tuang e. Kumhpui zaengrui latkaeng zanc guay hei nchamc raph mak

sihnic nuh de. Ntaw hei reynungc rui saaguangmei lwan khouhei Ruanglat khou *latsav naatnu* - parts of speech tachat nai muay e. Mi guay tei kabangc khou hylou e.

(1) noun
(2) pronoun
(3) adjective
(4) verb
(5) adverb
(6) postposition
(7) conjunction
(8) interjection

Mi guay tei tabui tabui cho khat tangv khat swna zauc kho.

6.3.1 Noun tabui ta cho?

Tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) **Delhi India** kaidai e.
(b) **Kabamvgay** aseic guang pwni.
(c) **Raengdaic kang** khat samc bam e.
(d) **Dui** hei aniw khang ringhtaek ge.
(e) **Nchumhmei** rui zawgay pwni.

Tiilou bammei latrian khou hei kabah khou nchamcmei latkaeng asaekc kazauh e. *Delhi, India* ramv zanc e, *kaidai* kabamv zanc e,Kabamvgay meic khat zanc e, *aseic* kaganv zanc e, *nruay* khouringh zanc e, *kang* kapang zanc e, *dui* puatc zanc e, *ringhtaek* tu zangvmei puatc khat zanc e, *nchumhmei* gunh khat zanc e. Heickumna zanh swna thaymei latkaeng azuh lat khou nai e. **Zanh swna thaymei latkaeng kaguayna ta kawmei zanc khat grammar khou phuaklou e. Mi kumhmei latkaeng guay tihei Noun twna kaw e.**

Latkamv khang :-

Imphal, Gaylaa, kang, nchumhmei - mi kumhmei guay hei e.

6.3.2 Pronoun tabui ta cho?

Latrian asaekc zauc dat lana mi guay tatei kariuna zanh phuak nuhmei latkaeng guay phu kho.

(a) Gaylaa aseic guang pwni, doulaaneic thu **kamei** guang mak khe.
(b) Alu Zauzianliu, **nang** tabui thangc tat khang ?
(c) Pulauc, **ai** school ku tat khang e.

Latrian guay hei zauc pwkhou '**Kamei** guang mak ge' twmei hei '**Gaylaa** guang mak ge' twtuang e. Mi khou hei **kamei** twmei latkaeng heirui **Gaylaa** twmei latkaeng phaan sinsw e. **Zauzianliu** twmei latkaeng phaan **nang, ai** sinsw e. Kumna zanh ta thaymei latkaeng tei saa han dat datna saamei phaan latkaeng baihmei azuh sinsw e. Zanh ta thaymei latkaeng ta noun twna kaw kan the. Ntaw saa bammei latkaeng guay hei thu zanh phaan lynmei - noun phaan lynmei latkaeng e, *kumna **noun phaan lynmei latkaeng guay ta thaymei zanc ta grammar khou*** **Pronoun** ***twna thay e.***

Kumna noun phaan lynna sinswmei latkaeng tatei Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv khang :-

kamei, nang, ai, aniw, nangniw, kaniw, mi, mi kumhmei guay hei pronoun raana the.

6.3.3 Adjective tabui ta cho?

Kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauc lana tiiloumei latthanv guay hei daw khang sw kho.

(a) **Akumhmei** alauc tei kaniw pangc khou gay hian bu cho?
(b) Kamei khav **daihmei** khat liu e.
(c) Nang saa nii bammei tei **tabui** lat cho?
(d) Gaanv **padeih** guang pwni.
(e) **Nkauhmei** bamv tei nang dungc o.

Mi latrian guay khouhei akumhmei, daihmei, khat, tabui, padeih, nkauhmei twmei latkaeng guay hei rui kadaeng khou naimei noun khatnic verb lwnlung, kagat, kasing kumhmei saapatna kalwn dinc e. Miguay tihei noun hamhethei pronoun zamh gunc ndauhmei latkaeng twna thay e. Mi kumhmei **noun hamhethei pronoun zamh kagunc ndauhmei latkaeng ta Adjective kaw e.**

Latkamv khang - ***gaymei, howgaymei, daihmei, nkauhmei*** - mi kumhmei guay hei e.

6.3.4 Verb tabui ta cho?

Latrian asaekc zauc dat kho.

(a) Kamei tat kan the.

(b) Khiuhbi latrik phungcguang e.

(c) Howniiliu phey dak ge.

(d) Maibungc khat paeng ruckhou nai e.

(e) Alauc tei kap be.

Latrian guay hei lev kariang naina kabangc khou thanvmei dawmei guay hei zauc kho.

	Thanvmei	*Dawmei*
(a)	Kamei tabui sw cho?	tat kan the.
(b)	Khiuhbi tabui sw cho?	phungcguang e.
(c)	Howniiliu tabui sw cho?	(phey) dak ge.
(d)	Maibungc akumh bo?	nai e.
(e)	Alauc tei tabui sw bo?	kap be.

Heickumna latrian kathuih zauc pwkhou noun, pronoun rui taanhmei, swmei, bammei, naimei ta thaymei latkaeng khat khat latrian kathuih khou kazauh e. Mi guay tihei grammar khou **verb** twna kaw e.

Taanhmei, swmei, bammei, naimei ta thaymei latkaeng ta Verb kaw e.

Latkamv khang :- ***tat*** *re,* ***bam*** *e,* ***tu*** *e,* ***taanc*** *e,* mi kumhmei guay hei verb raana the.

6.3.5 Adverb tabui ta cho?

Latrian kang khat zauc dat kho.

(a) Makunii katumcna tat kan e.

(b) Hyloumei maengh tei howgay hak e.

(c) Kamei gari peyna thou ranv e.

(d) Kamei peyna tanhpui mei e.

(e) Kamei doulaaneic kakai tho tat kan the.

Mi latrian panguh hei thanvna dawna kathai kho.

(a)	Makunii tei akumhna tat kan?	katumcna
(b)	Adih howgay bo?	hak
(c)	Gari tei adihkamv thou ranv bo?	peyna
(d)	Kamei adih kamv tanc bo?	peyna
(e)	Kamei tabui nungc tat kan tha? Tabui tho?	doulaanei kakai tho.

Reymei latrian khou 'katumcna' twmei hei rui tat kan e twmei lwnlung ta dinc e. Kaneimei latrian khou 'hak' hei rui 'gaymei' tei adihkamv cho twmei dinc e. Kathumhmei khou 'ranv' hei 'thou' twmei lwnlung e, 'peyna' twmei hei rui 'ranv' gat ta dinc e. Padeihmei latrian khou 'peyna' hei rui 'tanh' twmei hei adihkamv cho twmei dinc e. Panguhmei latrian khou 'doulaaneic' twmei hei rui 'tat kan the' twmei 'kaganv' ta dinc e, 'kakai' twmei hei rui 'tat kan the' twmei 'kabamv' ta tithay e.

Heickumna latkaeng asaekc rui verb rui taancpatmei lwnlung, kaganv, kabamv, adjective zamh kagat tei dinc e. Mi kumcna dinhmei tihei nic kagunc ndauhmei twna thay e. Mi kumhmei ti hei grammar khou Adverb kaw e. Kathumhmei latrian khou 'peyna' twmei hei rui adverb 'ranv' twmei gunc tei ndauh e. Mikumhmei tihei nic adverb twna thay e. Kumna **verb, adjective khatnic adverb baihmei khat zamh kagunc ndauhmei latkaeng ta tei Adverb kaw e.**

Latkamv - **Ranv, katumc, nzaeng, nthuanh, kai khou, lau tho** - mi kumhmei guay hei adverb raana the.

6.3.6 Postposition tabui ta cho?

Mi lathanv hei thay khang kabangc khou hyloubammei latrian gauy hei zauc kho.

Ai Imphal **tho** tat re

Tingkauh **thangc** ariw dat pwng e

Aniw Luangmai **khou** ariw kho

Pumh **twn** tei bomb siauckey khwan e

Aniu duidai **ruc khou** paliam chauna tat re

Kaniw laupah **lungc khou** zaeng nthaek ge

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei Imphal, tingkauh, Luangmai, pumh, duidai, laupah, mi guay hei kabam zanc noun raana e. Mi latkaeng guay tangv hei tho, thangc, khou, twn, ruc khou, lungc khou - latkaeng guay hei noun ta nkhav guang e. Mi kummei **kabam ta thaymei noun tangv guangmei latkaeng guay tihei Postposition kaw e.**

Latkamv khang - daeng (khou), bangc (khou), ta, thei, ruc, laa - mi guay hei postposition raana e.

(Mi kumhmei latkaeng guay hei English khou noun latkaeng hu khou guang e kumtina preposition kaw e. India khou Aryanmei nunc lat khou mi latkaeng zaat hei noun tangv guang e. Ruanglat khou nic mi latkaeng guay hei noun tangv guang e. Kumna mi latkaeng zaat tihei Ruanglat grammar khou Postposition twna kaw e.)

6.3.7 Conjunction Tabui ta cho?

Kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauclana Conjunction tabui tei cho kathaipat kho.

(a) Thuiguang **lev** Kataagup **lev** kaney tat kan the

(b) Baeng **khatnic** phuc tii o

(c) Kaniw kaithya tat kan e **kumna** hypei khat laa kan e

(d) Kamei **nic** ai **nic** nchamnac raana e

(e) Kamei lungcgay e **tihkic** panti e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei 'lev-lev' khatnic, 'nic-nic' hei rui nchamc nchamcmei part of speech hamh ethei latkaeng guay ta zay kariulou e, 'kumna, tihkic' hei rui latrian ta zay kariulou e. Mi kumhmei latkaeng guay tihei **Conjunction** kaw e.

Latkaeng lev latkaeng, latrian lev latrian ta zay kariumei latkaeng ta Conjunction kaw e.

Latkam khang -

kumna, tihkic, lev-lev, hamhethei, kumetihkic, kumsihnic, kumthena - mi kumhmei hei conjunction the.

6.3.8 Interjection tabui ta cho?

Kabangc khou latrian hei zauc lana karuc khou lathanv hei phupat kho.

Hei ! Akumh khang tha!

Alaih ! Nang dai !

Cha ! Chani e da !
E ! Heic tho tabui !

Mi latrian guay khouhei 'hei, alaih, cha, e' - twmei latkaeng guay hei lungning khou kadathdatna patmei verb khat ndauh e. Heickumna charynmei, kaluangmei, pingmei, mphutmei, kadathdatmei ta rah ndauhpatmei latkaeng azuh nai e. Miguay tatei grammar khou **interjection** kaw e.

Kumna **lungning khou ruph, paduph twna kahitowmei lungning makum khat saapat raph twmei khou sinswmei latkaeng tatei Interjection kaw e.**

Kumna latrian khou piu bammei lat hei zauc pwkhou **latsav naatnu** - part of speech tachat nai e. Mi latsav naatnu tachat hei lat kathai khou piu e. Mi guay tei kabangc khou hylou e.

(1) noun
(2) pronoun
(3) adjective
(4) verb
(5) adverb
(6) postposition
(7) conjunction
(8) interjection

KATHAIDWAN

1. Parts of Speech (Latsav Naatnu) tabui ta cho ? Parts of speech hei tabui khang cho ? Parts of speech zanc guay kiu khat khat swna hy o.
2. Noun tabui ta cho ? Latkamv tiina hy o.
3. Pronoun tabui ta cho ? Latkamv tiina hy o.
4. Verb tabui ta cho ? Latkamv tiina hy o.
5. Ruanglat khou Postposition nai e. Mikiu tabui tei cho? Latkamv tiina hy o.
6. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian hei part of speech swna dinc o. Luangchumc khou Atun lungclou khwan e. Kamei hei kapumc peyna gay e kumtina tanc e. Kamei lyantuangh akhat re.

7.0 LATSAV NAATNU KIK

(Parts of Speech - Kinds of)

7.1.0 NOUN ZAAT

7.1.1 Proper Noun

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkaeng guay khouhei kazauhmei noun guay zauc kho.

(a) Mi hei **Alangh** thuak ge

(b) **Delhi India** zamh kaidai e

(c) Akai guaickui zanc **Buimaapui** kaw e

(d) **Kabigay Lansinliu** puningc e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei kazauhmei noun pangc khouhei 'Alangh' duithuak khat zanc e, 'Imphal', 'Manipur' khat khatna ta thaymei ramv zanc e, 'Buimaapui' guaihkui khat zanc e. Katutluc meic khat zanc e. Mi kumhmei **kalingphingmei meic, kabamv, puatc zanc ta thaymei noun ta Proper Noun kaw e.**

Latkamv khang :- **Zeihlat, Mikcharung, Imphal, Puiluanh** - mi kumhmei guay hei e.

7.1.2 Common Noun

(a) Mi **hypei** hei thow tuang cho?

(b) **Guaih** khat tat guang e.

(c) **Alauc** khat guang e.

(d) **Chaeng** khou **meic** geicna tat re.

Mi latrian guay khouhei hypei, guaih, alauc, chaeng twmei latkaeng guay hei noun raana e. Hypei twethei hypei guayna ta thay e, guaih twethei guaih kaguayna ta thay e; Alauc, chaeng, meic, miguay hei nic noun e, khat ta saa pwkhou kaguayna ta thay e. Mi kumhmei **khat ta saa pwkhou kaguayna ta thaymei noun tihei Common Noun kaw e.**

Latkam khang :- **Latrik, takuanh, phey, pumh, duithuak, laupuk** - mi kumhmei guay hei **common noun** raana the.

7.1.3 Material Noun

(a) Mi mwn hei **che** rui kasiamh tuang e

(b) Mi hypei hei **mukdui** maek khe

(c) **Kachaek** howgay e.

(d) **Ntey** bumc e, **tamtouh** ndeih e.

Tiiloumei latrian khouhei che, mukdui, chah, ntey, tamtouh miguay hei noun raana e. Miguay kakiak kakiak swbak sihnic kazanc kalaih mak ge. Puatc baihmei kasiamh khang nuhmei puat raana e. Mikumhmei noun tihei **Material Noun** kaw e.

Puat khat kasiamh khou gut nuhmei, kakiak kakiak swbak sinic kazanc kalaih makmei noun ta tei Material Noun kaw e. Syniang, kachaekc, dui, muk, mikumhmei guay hei **Material Noun** the.

7.1.4 Abstract Noun

(a) **Ramhpingmei** ta zamsimei kaw e.

(b) **Lunghthanmei** hei nkauhmei panty e.

(c) **Gaymei** ta laaniimei raana e

(d) **Khaenglouthaymei** gunc hei meic kataana khang kage nai e

(e) **Nchumhmei** maekna **tanhmei, bauhmei** raana rui rihngam tuang hamh e.

Tiiloubammei latrian guay khouhei ramhpingmei, lunghthanmei, nchumhmei, gaymei, khaengvlouthaymei, tanhmei, bauhmei, miguay hei lungning na rui thaymei kalwn kaliak maekmei gunh guay zanc raana e. Mi kumhmei guay tihei **Abstract Noun** kaw e.

Kalwn kaliak maekmei lungning rui thaymei, kakhanhmei, gunc mi kumhmei noun ta Abstract Noun kaw e.

Latkamv khang :- **kheyliak, chariakhthaymei, lunghgutmei,** mi kumhmei guay hei e.

7.1.5 Collective Noun

Nchu **kapang kapang** samc e

Guaih **kang** khat lau khou patre

Mi **class** khouhei nchamnac riakdei nai e

Kailiangh khat zaeng kum e

Mi latrian guay khouhei 'kapang' hei nruay kasing geihmei ta thay e. class twmei hei ntumei-ngaanvmei nchamnac nunc thaymei latkaeng e, 'kang' twmei hei guaih mpeyna ta thay e, 'kailiangh' twmei hei kailaek asaekc kariumei ta thay e. Mi kumhmei noun tihei **Collective Noun** twna kaw e

Maansei, khouringh, puatc guay kapang, kakang ta thaymei nount ta Collective Noun kaw e.

Latkamv khang :- **khangchu, pei, lauzam, sucnunc,** mi kumhmei guay hei the.

Karuc khou noun zaat guay kathai kan the. Ruanglat khou noun zaat panguh nai e. Mi panguh kiu thu-

(1) proper noun

(2) common noun

(3) material noun

(4) abstract noun

(5) collective noun, mi guay hei e.

7.2.0 PRONOUN ZAAT

Noun phaan lynmei latkaeng ta **Pronoun** kaw e. Mi hei ncham kan the. Ntaw tho pronoun hei kazaat azuh nai cho twmei zauc kho.

7.2.1 Personal Pronoun

(1) **Ai** saa pwng e.

(2) **Nang** tabui saa nii bo?

(3) **Kamei** thay pwni day?

(4) **Nangniw** tabui taanh khang cho?

Karuc khou ai, nang, kamei, nangniw twmei latkaeng guay hei noun phaan lynmei - pronoun raana e. 'Ai' hei lat saa bammei mei tatei thay e, 'nang, nangniw' twmei hei rui lat nking bammei tatei thay e, khatnic 'kamei' twmei hei mi lat saa bammei nic hamh, nking bammei nic hamh tihkic kalam khou saatou bammei kathumhmei 'mei' ta thay e.

Latsaa bampui mei tatei thaymei pronoun ta **first person** kaw e.

Latkamv :- ai, aney, aniw, aniu.

Lat nking bampui mei tatei thaymei pronoun ta **second person** kaw e.

Latkamv:- nang, nangney, nangniw

Lat saa bammei hamh, nking bammei nic hamh tihkic kalam khou saatow bammei kathumh swmei mei ta thaymei pronoun tatei **third person** kaw e.

Latkam :- kamei, kaney, kaniw

Person kathumh ta thaymei, meic ta thaymei pronoun ta Personal Pronoun kaw e.

7.2.2 Demonstrative Pronoun

(a) **Mihei** thow cho ?

(b) **Heictei** thow tuang cho ?

(c) Kamei **mitei** laa pwlak ge.

Mi latrian guay khou hei mihei, heictei, mitei mi pronoun guay hei meic hamhethei puatc ta soucna dinc e. Kumhpui zaengrui **meic hamhethei puatc ta soucna dinhmei ta thaymei pronoun ta Demonstrative Pronoun twna kaw e.**

Latkamv :- Mi, mihei, mitei, heic, heictei, mikumhmei, guay hei e.

7.2.3 Infinite Pronoun

Kabangc khou hyloumei hei zauc kho

(a) Mi hei **puiruhnac** rui nuh e

(b) **Kaguayna** gaymei raana di the.

(c) **Ramh** khat kage nai e

(d) **Gaanvsaekc** thu mitei kage nai nuh e

(e) **Thoupwnic** nuh de.

Mi latrian guay khouhei puiruhnac, kaguayna, ramh, gaanvsaekc, thowpwnic, miguay hei pronoun raana e. Mi pronoun guay hei thow phaan hamhethei tabui puat phaan lyn tu cho twmei nthan thiakhthiak mak ge. Mi kumhmei pronoun tihei **Infinite Pronoun** kaw e.

Thow phaan, tabui phaan lyn tu cho twmei nthanna thay makmei pronoun ta Infinite Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv :- meicnunv, kaguayna, ramhguay, thowpwnic.

7.2.4 Distributive Pronoun

Kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) **Khat khat** swna nangniw gut ro

(b) **Khatnasihnic** khuay guay kaling hamh e

(c) **Khat ny khat ny** nangney bam o.

(d) **Meicsing** kaniw daengkaa phay phay mphang e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei khat khat, khatnasinic, khat ny khat ny, meicsing twmei pronoun guay hei kasing geihmei khouteirui khat khat swna naimei meic hamhethei puatc zamh phaan-lyn swmei pronoun e. Mi kumhmei pronoun tihei **Distributive Pronoun** kaw e.

Meic, puatc tazumei khou khat khat swna nai bammei ta thaymei pronoun ta Distributive Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv :- khat khat, kathuih, khatnasihnic, meicsing.

7.2.5 Reflexive Pronoun

(a) Ai **araana** nzamh e

(b) Gayrei **karaana** ta maengzau khou zauc e

(c) **Karaana kakhubut** doupui lat saa e

(d) **Karaa karaana** lwn thay kho

(e) Kaihouhmei nunc **kaniw raana** latgeic khwan e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei araana, karaana, karaa karaana, kaniw raana twmei latkaeng guay hei noun hamh ethei pronoun guay lev khatna swmei tei ndauh e. Mi kumhmei pronoun tihei **Reflexive Pronoun** kaw e.

Noun hamh ethei baihmei pronoun lev khatna swmei tei ndauhmei pronoun ta Reflexive Pronoun kaw e.

7.2.6 Interogative Pronoun

Tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) **Thow** tat khang cho?

(b) **Thow thow** cho chadi langv e.

(c) **Tabui** rui hy khang?

(d) **Tabui tabui** tei phungh khang cho?

(e) **Akumhmei** tei laa khang cho?

(f) **Thowramcmei** guang bo?

Mi latkaeng guay khouhei thow, thow thow, tabui, tabui tabui, akumhmei, thowramc twmei guay hei thanvmei thaymei pronoun raana e. Mi kumhmei tihei **Interogative Pronoun** kaw e.

Thanvmei ta thaymei pronoun ta Interrogative Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv: - tabui, thow, akumhmei, tabui tabui, thow thow, akumh akumhmei twmei guay hei the.

7.2.7 Emphasizing Pronoun

Kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) **Ai kahak** tat tangc the

(b) **Kaidai kahak** tei tho daic hak mak ge.

(c) **Latkaeng kahak** tei nking si maih the

(d) **Kaniw kahak** kaniw khuay saa ndauh the.

(e) **Guangh kapumc kahak** guangna swan tei tiipat re

(f) **Apumc kahak** hei nringh kaipat swna tiipat re

(g) **Kaniw pumc kahak** court khou lyan kan e.

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei ai kahak, kaidai kahak, latkaeng kahak, kaniw kahak khatni kapumc kahak, apumc kahak, kaniw pumc kahak twmei latkaeng guay hei noun hamhethei pronoun tatei kathuk tiilouna saa e. Mi tihei **Emphasizing Pronoun** kaw e.

Noun hamhethei Pronoun ta kathuk tiilouna saamei pronoun latkaeng tatei Emphasizing Pronoun kaw e.

Latkamv : - kahak, apumc kahak, kapumc kahak, kaniw pumc kahak, miguay hei e.

Karuc khou kathai kariang kanmei hei zauc pwkhou Ruanglat khou Pronoun chanei hei mphang e. mi guay kiu thu -

(1) personal pronoun

(2) demonstrative pronoun

(3) distributive pronoun

(4) indefinite pronoun
(5) reflexive pronoun
(6) interogative pronoun
(7) emphasizing pronoun, hei e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Ruanglat khou pronoun zaat azuh nai bo? Tabui tabui tei cho?
   Nang raana hy o, latkamv khat khat hy o
2. Person azuh nai bo? Tabui tabui tei cho?
   Latkamv khat khat hy o.
3. Personal pronoun tabui tei cho?
   Latkamv tiina dinc o.
4. Puatc hamhethei meic ta soucna saamei pronoun ta tabui kaw bo? Latkamv tiina dinc o
5. Tiiloumei pronoun guay hei tabui tabui pronoun cho?
   Akumhmei _____
   Araana _____
   Nang _____
   Mitei _____
   Puiruhnac _____

7.3.0 ADJECTIVE ZAAT

Adjective tabui cho ? Noun khatnic pronoun gunc ndauhmei latkaeng ta adjective kaw e twmei kathai kan the. Ntaw hei adjective zaat azuh nai cho twmei zauc kho.

7.3.1 Qualitative Adjective (Adjective of Quality)

Qualitative Adjective tabui tei cho ? Mihei thay khang kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei kathai zauc kho

	Latrian	*Adjective*	*Adjective taanv*
(a)	Kamei sansipui mei e.	sansipui	'meic' lwnlung, gunc saa ndauh e
(b)	Hypei haenghmei tei tii o.	haenghmei	'hypei' lwn tei saa ndauh e
(c)	Howgaymei mwn khat puangc bam e.	howgaymei	'mwn' lwn tei saa ndauh e

(d) Lai daihmei khou tei dui nai e. daihmei 'lai' lwn tei saa ndauh o

(e) Luaysiimei Gayrim guang e. luaysimei 'Gayrim' gunc saa ndauh e

Karuc khou latrian guay khou sinsw bammei adjective guay hei rui noun khatnic pronoun zamh lwnlung, gunc ta saa ndauh e. Mi kumhmei adjective tihei **Qualitative Adjective** kaw e.

Noun khatnic pronoun zamh gunc, lwnlung ta dinhmei Adjective ta Qualitative Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv: - gaymei, siimei, nsuanmei, tanhmei, mphwanmei, mikumhmei guay hei e.

7.3.2 Quantitative Adjective (Adjective of Quantity)

Quantitative Adjective hei kalwn thay khang kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei kathai kho.

Latrian	*Adjective*	*Adjective taanv*
(a) Ntey titna tii o.	titna	Ntey azuh cho dinc e
(b) Dui taleina zangv me.	taleina	Dui azuh cho dinc e
(c) Katingh geicdou nkhan kan the.	geicdou	katingh azuh cho dinc e
(d) Napsaam heizu hei kage maek ge.	heizu	napsaam azuh cho dinc e
(e) Saamh khou nap tazu nai e.	tazu	nap azuh nai cho dinc e

Mi latrian guay khouhei titna, taleina, geicdou, heizu, tazu twmei latkaeng guay hei rui noun zamh kachaengc tei dinc e. Mi kumhmei noun zamh chaengc dinhmei adjective latkaeng tihei **Quantitative Adjective** kaw e.

Noun zamh kachaengc dinhmei adjective ta Quantitative Adjective kaw e

Latkamv: - peyna, kaguayna, kapwmna, asaek

7.3.3 Numeral Adjective (Adjective of Number)

Numeral adjective hei kalwn thay khang kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) Adai rui **reymei** swan tei laatow kan e.

(b) Nang **kaneimei** rian khou tei ding o.

(c) Tingthai **kathumh** laaguang o.

(d) Zaeng **chanei** rui neidak khat sw e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei 'reymei' kaneimei, kathumh, chanei twmei adjective guay hei nthei-rey thaymei sing hamh ethei kasing ta thaymei adjective e. Mi kumhmei adjective ta **Numeral Adjective** kaw e.

Kasing hamhethei kasing lev kariang naina nthei-rey tithaymei Adjective ta Numeral Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv :- reymei, kaneimei, kathumhmei, chanei, ruh, mikumhmei hei e.

7.3.4 Distributive Adjective

Kabangc khou latrian guay hei kathaina distributive adjective lwn thay khang sw kho.

(a) Meic **khat khat** swna saa kho.

(b) Abahthai **kanei kanei** zuanc bam e.

(c) Gin **kathuihna** khouhei guang e.

Mi latrian guay khouhei khat khat, kanei kanei, kathuih twmei adjective guay hei kalangv kalangv swmei ta how e. Mikumhmei adjective tihei **distributive adjective** kaw e.

Kalangv kalangv swmei ta thaymei Adjective ta Distributive Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv :- kathuih, pum, sing, khat khat, kanei kanei, mikummei guay hei e.

7.3.5 Demonstrative Adjective

(a) **Mitei** thow cho ?

(b) **Mi** hypei hei thow tuang cho ?

(c) **Heic** ramc tei tat khang ning e.

(d) **Heic** kai tei pun pwni the.

Mi latrian guay khou 'mi, heic', twmei adjective rui kadaeng khou noun hamhethei pronoun ta soucna dinc e. Mi adjective tihei **Demonstrative Adjective** kaw e.

Soucna dinhmei adjective ta Demonstrative Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv: - Mi, heic, mitei, mihei, heictei, - mi guay hei e.

7.3.6 Interogative Adjective

Thanvmei thaymei adjective nic nai e. Mitei thay gay khang kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei kathai zauc kho.

(a) Hauphic khoutei haubungc **azuh** nai bo ?

(b) Nang taanc niimei kiu **tabui** taanv cho ?

(c) **Akumhmei** phey tei cho ?

Mi latrian guay khouhei azuh, tabui, akumhmei, twmei adjective guay hei thanvmei thaymei latrian khou sinsw e. Mikumhmei adjective tihei **Interrogative Adjective** kaw e.

Thanvmei thaymei adjective ta Interrogative Adjective kaw e.

Latkamv :- azuh, tabui, akumhmei mikumhmei guay hei e.

Aniw rui thay e, Ruanglat khou kabangc khou tiiloumei Adjective zaat charuk hei mphang e.

(1) Qualitative Adjective (Adjective of quality)
- Kagunc, kalwn, kathukh dincmei

(2) Quantitative Adjective (Adjective of quaNtity)
- Kachaengc, geic-rau dinhmei

(3) Numeral Adjective (Adjective of Number)
- Kasing, kasing ley kariangrian nthei-rey dinhmei

(4) Distributive Adjective
- Kalangv kalangv, kakang kakang dinhmei

(5) Demonstrative Adjective
- Soucna, nchinna dinhmei

(6) Interrogative Adjective
- Thanvmei ta thaymei

KATHAIDWAN

1. Ruanglat khou adjective azuh nai bo ? Tabui tabui cho hy o.

_____ _____ _____ _____

_____ _____ _____ _____

2. Adjective zaat hy o (katwn chaana)

(a) Soucna, nchinna dinhmei _____

(b) Kachaengc, geic-rau dinhmei _____

(c) Thanvmei thaymei _____

(d) Kasing, nthei-rey dinhmei _____

(e) Khat khat, kalang kalang dinhmei _____

(f) Kagunc, kalwn, kathukh dinhmei _____

3. Kabangc khou hyloumei adjective guay zamh latkamv kathumh kathumh hy o.

(a) Qualitative adjective

_____ _____ _____

(b) Distributive adjective

_____ _____ _____

(d) Quantitative adjective

_____ _____ _____

(e) Interrogative adjective

_____ _____ _____

(f) Numeral adjective

_____ _____ _____

4. Kabangc khou hyloumei adjective guay hei nchamc chamcmei tei zay kariulou o.

(a) Adjective of Number - Qualitative Adjective

(b) Quantitative Adjective - Numeral Adjective

(c) Adjective of Quality - Adjective of Quantity

7.4.0 VERB ZAAT

Taanhmei, kumhmei, swmei ta thaymei latkaeng ta verb kaw e twmei kathai the. Taanhmei, swmei khou subject rui taancpat tuang e. Mihei kathai gay khang kabangc khou latrian guay hei zauc kho.

Latrian	***subject***	***verb***	***object***
Guaipuang bam e.	Guaipuang	bam e	x
Kamei guang e.	Kamei	guang e	x
Ai kata thay e.	Ai	thay e	kata
Mi tei hypei e.	Mi tei	e	hypei
Adam apammei e.	Adam	e	apammei
Gayrey tatdyn hy e.	Gayrey	hy e	tatdyn

(a) Ai kata thay e, thow ta thay? kata - object ge
Gayrey tatdyn hy e, tabui ta hy? tatdyn - object ge

Subject zamh object naimei verb ta Transitive Verb kaw e
Latkamv - thay, hy, thou, zay - mikumhmei hei e

(b) Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khouhei Guaipuang bam e, Kamei guang e , hei object kazauh mak ge. Mikumhmei **object maekmei verb tihei Intransitive Verb kaw e.**

7.5.0 ADVERB ZAAT

Adverb hei kabah khatnic piumei lwan theilayna kabangc khou hyloumei kang kumcna kathai nuh e.

7.5.1 Adverb of Time (Kaganv dinhmei)

(a) Mihei ai **kahunungc** chu kan the.

(b) Aniu taanv **ntaw** kahouh pwni the.

(c) Ai tatdyn tei **nyanna** laatou the.

(d) Kamei khouhei **tingmik pum** guang e.

(e) Kamei khouhei **thaurey khou** taanclou e.

Tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei kahunungc, ntaw, nyan, tingmik pum, thaurey khou miguay hei verb rui taanhmei lev kariang nai e. Mi kumhmei guay tihei **Adverb of Time** e.

Verb rui taanhmei lev kariang naimei ganv ta dinhmei adverb ta Adverb of Time kaw e.

Latkamv:- aseic, nthuanh, doulaanei, katumcna, asaanhmakna - mikumhmei guay hei e.

7.5.2 Adverb of Place (Katwn dinhmei)

(a) **Khouhei** ding o.

(b) Khav **duibangc** bam e.

(c) Jisu **thei** lay o.

(d) Mouc **thingtwan** tow e.

(e) Ai **kaithyan** tat re.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei - khouhei, duibangc, thingtwan, thei, kaithyan miguay hei verb rui taanhmei kabamv katwn ta dinc e. Miguay hei **Adverb of Place** the.

Verb rui taanhmei kabamv, katwn dinhmei adverb ta Adverb of Place kaw e.

Latkamv:- mpaeng, kalungc, nthei, karuc, chaeng twn, kaithei mikumhmei guay hei e.

7.5.3 Adverb of Manner (akumh swna, tabui thiak khou)

(a) Thuancku pac **nthan** e.

(b) David gari thou **tanc** e.

(c) Ngasatna tei **guangcna** tat re.

(d) Puatc tei **nzaengna** loukey e.

(e) Miktiatmei tei **kathamna** pac e.

Tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei nthan,tanc, guangcna, nzaengna, kathamna - mi adverb guay hei rui verb rui taanhmei tei akumhna, tabui thiak, tabui lwnlung khou twmei tei dinc e. Kumna miguay hei **adverb of manner** raana e.

Verb rui taanhmei thiak, lwnlung ta dinhmei adverb tatei Adverb of Manner kaw e.

Latkamv: -

Kaucna kap be.

Pakna nthau e.

Nzianna nkhavlou e.

Taanc **katumc** e.

- mi khou kaucna, pakna, nzianna, katumc twmei guay hei **Adverb of Manner** raan e.

7.5.4 Adverb of Degree (adih geic, adih kamv)

(a) Kamei **peyna** katupna guang e.
(b) Nap katumc **langvna** tu riu.
(c) Syan geic **hakna** nai e.
(d) Kakhuan hei geic **rahraa** the.
(e) Tunac tei lu suan chuy **liang** e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khouhei peyna, langvna, rahraa, hakna, liang - mi uay hei verb taanv ta kagat, kachaengc tei dinhmei adverb guay e.

Adjective khatnic adverb zamh kachaengc, kagat tithaymei adverb ta Adverb of Degree twna kaw e.

Latkamv:-

Zaic **hakna** guang e.
Nap geic **langvna** tw riu.
Taanv si **hakna** taanh riu.
Katei geic **chuy** the.

7.5.5 Adverb of Frequency (adih katup kabup)

(a) Khouhei kamei guang **liangnei** the.
(b) Naptu **katup** langv riu.
(c) Mi lu hei **kadakdak** khou chu e.
(d) Kata Imphal khou how **tanhtan** de.
(e) Kamei khouhei **khatsinic** guangmak ge.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei 'liangnei, katup, kadakdak, tanhtan, khatsinic' miguay hei verb rui taanhmei tei adihkamv katup kabup cho twmei tei dinc e. Mikumhmei adverb hei **Adverb of Frequency** raana e.

Adihkamv, akumhna katupna pat cho twmei dinhmei adverb ta Adverb of Frequency kaw e.

7.5.6 Interrogative Adverbs

(a) Adam **tabui khou** bam bo?
(b) Kamei **tabui khang** guang tu cho?
(c) Kaniw **tabuinungc** tat khang cho?
(d) Nang **akumhna** taanc nina cho?
(e) Nang khau khou syan **azuh** nai bo?

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khouhei tabui khou, tabui khang, tabui nungc, akumhna, azuh, - miguay hei verb taanv ta thanvmei latkaeng raana e. Mi kumhmei adverb tihei **Interrogative Adverb** kaw e.

Thanvmei ta thaymei adverb ta Interrogative Adverb kaw e.

Latkamv :-Tabuiswna, tabui khou, tabui nungc, akumhna, azuh - mi guay hei e.

Kumna Ruanglat khou adverb zaat charuk hei mphang e.

(1) Adverb of Time	(Verb zamh taanv ganv dinhmei)
(2) Adverb of Place	(Verb zamh taanv bam dinhmei)
(3) Adverb of Manner	(Verb zamh taanv thiak dinhmei)
(4) Adverb of Degree	(Verb zamh taanv azuh, adihkam dinhmei)
(5) Adverb of Frequency	(Verb zamh taanv katup kabupmei dinhmei)
(6) Interrogative Adverb	(Verb zamh taanv lam khou thanvmei)

KATHAIDWAN

1. Adverb zaat azuh nai cho ? Mi zaat guay zanc tei hy o.
2. Gaatmei tei hy padiklou o.
   (a) Verb zamh taanv ganv dinhmei adverb ta .....kaw e.
   (b) Verb zamh taanv bamv dinhmei adverb ta..... kaw e.
   (c) Verb zamh .....dinhmei adverb ta adverb of manner kaw e.
   (d) Verb zamh .....dinhmei adverb ta adverb of degree kaw e.
   (e) Adverb of Frequency hei ..... dinhmei adverb e.
   (f) Verb zamh taanv lam khou thanvmei adjective ta ..... kaw e.
3. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khou hei naimei adverb kapahpatna kazaat saa o.
   (a) Mitei akumhna pat kan tu cho?
   (b) Kamei kai khou bam e.
   (c) Kamei khouhei guang liang nei the.
   (d) Mitei peyna kunghmei puat re.
   (e) Gari tei thou ranvna tat kan e.
   (f) Kakai Imphal khou nai e.
   (g) Kamei adih kabiu tha?

7.6.0 CONJUNCTION ZAAT

Latrian lev latrian hamhethei latkaeng lev latkaeng ta zay kariuloumei latkaeng ta **Conjunction** kaw e, twmei hei kathai kan the. Kumna ntaw thu conjunction latkaeng guay rui latkaeng lev latkaeng khatnic latrian ta zay kariumei lwn tei zauc lana kazaat kapah kho.

7.6.1. Coordinating Conjunction

(a) Baeng lev phuc kahaw e.

(b) Nap khatnic bi lingclou e.

(c) Nap hamhethei ntyan tw kho.

(d) Ai nic kamei nic tat nii e.

Karuc khou latrian guay khouhei lev, khatnic, hamhethei, nic-nic twmei Conjuction guay hei rui latkaeng kanei ta zay kariuloumei swna piu e.

Latrian ta zay kariuloumei lwn tei zaucdat kho.

(a) Kamei guang pwni kumna puatc tei phungcguang pwni.

(b) Ai phey tei phungcguang pwni tihkic mihei gay hakmei thu hamh e.

(c) Gaythuih M.A luaimei the khatnic Philip M.Com luaimei e.

Tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei kumna, tihkic, khatnic twmei conjunction guay hei rui latrian kanei kanei ta zay kariulou e.

Tiilou reymei latrian padei hei zauc kaluaih dat kho.

Latrian	***Latrian kanei tipatmei***	***conjunction***
(a) Baeng lev phuc kahaw e.	Baeng kahaw e, phuc kahaw e.	lev
(b) Nap khatnic bi lingclou e.	Nap lingclou e, bi lingclou e.	khatnic
(c) Nap hamh ethei ntyan tu kho.	Nap tu kho, ntyan tu kho.	hamh ethei
(d) Ai nic kamei nic tat nii e.	Ai tat nii e, kamei tat nii e.	nic - nic

Heic kumna swbakna zauc pwkhou latrian guay hei latrian kanei kanei zay kariuna kasiamh tuang e twna laa nuh e. Kumna karuc khou tiiloumei kalangv kanei hei zauc pwkhou tiiloumei Conjunction guay hei kabah nchamcmei nthuihmei latrian guay zay kariulou tuang e twmei thay e. Mi kumhmei conjunction tihei **Coordinating Conjunction** twna kaw e.

Latkaeng lev latkaeng hamhethei kabah nchamcmei nthuihmei latrian guay zay kariuloumei conjunction ta Coordinating Conjunction kaw e.

Latkamv:- lev, khatnic, hamh ethei, nic-nic, kum pwkhou, kumethei, kumetihkic, kumhpui zaengrui - mi kumhmei guay hei e.

7.6.2. Subordinating Conjunction:

Conjunction zaat baihmei khat zauc dat kho.

(a) Kamei tat pwni twmei ai thay e.

(b) Nang guang pwni de twethei ai nang ta nkhwan bam pwni.

(c) Phey tei gay e tihkic meic rui mitei kahaw mak ge.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khou hei -

twmei = twna saamei

twethei= twtuang nai ethei

tihkic = twkhwan sihnic

Latrian guay		***Conjunction***
(a) Kamei tat pwni **twna saamei** ai thay e.	=	twmei
(b) Nang guang pwni **twtuang nai ethei** ai nang ta nkhwan bam pwni.	=	twethei
(c) Phey tei gay e **twkhwan sinic** meic rui kahaw makge.	=	tikic

(a) khou 'kamei tat pwni twna saamei' hei kabah phaamei tii ngam makmei latrian e, khou rui 'ai thay e' twmei hei rui kadai swna saaniimei lat tei e. Mikumhmei latrian guay ta zay kariuloumei Conjunction tei 'twmei' hei e.

(b) lev (c) khou nic 'twethei' 'tihkic' twmei hei kathiak nchamcmei conjunction raana e. Mi kumhmei conjunction tihei subordinating conjunction kaw e.

Kabah phaamei tii ngam makmei latrian khat lev kabah phaamei latrian khat lev zay kariuloumei Conjunction ta Subordinate Conjunction kaw e.

Lakamv:-

twna, twmei, twsinic, twethei, tikic.

Kumna Conjunction zaat kanei nai e. Mikiu thu -

(1) Coordinating Conjunction

(2) Subordinating Conjunction

7.7.0 INTERJECTION ZAAT

Mik khou howna, nukuanc khou chuna, lungning khou thuphthupna ningmei, kadathdatmei neihlaamei, zaengsimei raa rahpatmei latkaeng guay tatei **Interjection** kaw e.

Latkamv khang :-

Kadathdatmei ndauhmei	=	Is! Hi! Tabuichu! - mikumhmei
Neihlaamei ndauhmei	=	Gai the da! Neihlaa e bo!
Karaaengmei ndauhmei	=	Ach! Chany chakhow e!
Ryanraamei ndauhmei	=	Hi! Ai mu ni!
Lunghpuamhmei ndauhmei	=	Tut! Tabui-a!
Kaluangmei ndauhmei	=	Hei! Alaih!
Suhmei ndauhmei	=	Alei! alei! alei! Apuai alei !

Interjection hei kazaat takhauhkhauna nai thuai mak ge. Lungning khou thuphthupna saapatmei guay tei rui tabui cho twmei tei thay e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Conjunction zaat azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
2. Coordinating Conjunction lev Subordinating Conjunction nchamc makmei tabui tei cho?
3. Interjection tabui tei cho? Latkamv asaekc hy o.
4. Pingmei, kaluangmei, suhmei, charynmei ndauhmei Interjection latrian khat khat kasiamh o.

8.0 LATKAENG DUANHMEI
(Word Formation)

Latkaeng hei swbakna kabah naimei suic nganvloumei latkaeng hamhethei latkiak tatei root kaw e. Mi kumhmei root tihei tisaengc tadaicpat lana latkaeng kabah baih baihmei tipat re. Mi root khouhei kathei kahu latkaeng haap kuanlouna kabah baihmei latkaeng tipat re. Mi kumhmei lwan tihei grammar khou **Word Formation** - latkaeng kasiamhpatmei twna kaw e. Word Formation lwan khouhei **affixation** khatnic **compounding** hei kadai swmei e.

(a) Affixation

Affixation hei latkaeng thei-hu khou haapguangna latkaeng ta tisaengc tidaic patmei ta e. Affixation hei kanei patna thay e - **prefixation** khatnic **suffixation.** Prefixation hei latkaeng hu khou haapguangmei khatnic suffixation hei nthei khou haapguangmei ta thay e. Kumna affixation hei duina *prefix* + **root** + *suffix* twna saa nchin nuh e.

(b) Compounding

Root kanei hamhethei kanei khangsuangc geicna kariuna duanhmei ta compounding twna thay e.

8.1.0 AFFIXATION

(a) Prefixation

Noun root hu khou **ka** prefix swlouna noun latkaeng kasiamh saengcpatna ti-nthuihlou e.

ganv khou **ka** prefix swna	**ka + ganv**	=	**kaganv**
riw khou **ka** prefix swna	**ka + riw**	=	**kariw**
laan khou **ka** prefix swna	**ka + laan**	=	**kalaan**
laanv khou **ka** prefix swna	**ka + laanv**	=	**kalaanv**

Verb root hu khou **sw** prefix swlouna verb latkaeng kasiamh saengcpatna ti-nthuihlou e.

bak khou **sw** prefix swna	**sw + bak**	=	**swbak**
chuy khou **sw** prefix swna	**sw + chuy**	=	**swchuy**

kasic khou **sw** prefix swna **sw + kasic = swkasic**
kaek khou **sw** prefix swna **sw + kaek = swkaek**

Verb root hu khou **ti** prefix swlouna verb latkaeng tisaengcpat re.

thay khou **ti** prefix swna **ti + thay = tithay**
tat khou **ti** prefix swna **ti + tat = titat**
saa khou **ti** prefix swna **ti + saa = tisaa**
taanc khou **ti** prefix swna **ti + taanc = titaanc**

Verb root khou **ram** prefix swlouna noun latkaeng kasiamh e.

gay khou **ram** prefix swna **ram + gay = ramgai**
taanh khou **ram** prefix swna **ram + taanh = ramtaan**
zangv khou **ram** prefix swlouna **ram + zangv = ramzang**
tat khou **ram** prefix swna **ram + tat = ramtat**

Verb root khou **karam** prefix swlouna noun latkaeng kasiamh e.

hy khou **karam** prefix swna **karam + hy = karamhi**
phungh khou **karam** prefix swna **karam + phungh = karamphung**
zauh khou **karam** prefiux mswna **karam + zauh = karamzau**
ding khou **karam** prefix swna **karam + ding = karamding**

(b) Suffixation

Verb root khat khou '**mei**' suffix swlouna latkaeng tisaengcpatna nominal word form tiswlou e.

tat khou **mei** suffix swna **tat + mei = tatmei**
bam khou **mei** suffix swna **bam + mei = bammei**
taanh khou **mei** suffix swna **taanh + mei = taanhmei**

Verb root khou '**na**' suffix swlouna adverb latkaeng kasiamh e.

kap khou **na** suffix swna **kap + na = kapna**
nuic khou **na** suffix swna **nuic + na = nuicna**
pak khou **na** suffix swna **pak + na = pakna**

Noun Root khou bound root lev nominalizer suffix swlouna latkaeng kasiamh e.

Root	+	bound root	+	nominalizer		
ntanh	+	**dy**	+	**mei**	=	**tanhdymei**
lau	+	**taanh**	+	**mei**	=	**lautaanhmei**
thing	+	**ruamh**	+	**mei**	=	**thingruamhmei**
rav	+	**khaeng**	+	**mei**	=	**ravkhaengmei**
ramh	+	**thay**	+	**mei**	=	**ramhthaymei**

8.2.0 COMPOUNDING

(a) Root khat lev baihmei root hamhethei latkaeng khat lev baihmei latkaeng khat kariuna latkaeng kasiamh e.

pui lev **nah** kariuna	**pui + nah**	=	**puinav**
pu lev **nah** kariuna	**pu + nah**	=	**punav**
lat lev **meic** kariuna	**lat + meic**	=	**latmei**
lau lev **kakaipouc** kariuna	**lau + kaipouc**	=	**laupouc**
baeng lev **kadaan** lev kariuna	**baeng + daan**	=	**baengdaan**
guaih lev **kalingc** kariuna	**guaih + kalingc**	=	**guailingc**
si lev **kakang** kariuna	**si + kakang**	=	**sikang**
nap lev **lai** kariuna	**nap + lai**	=	**naplai**
lau lev **chaeng** kariuna	**lau + chaeng**	=	**lauchaeng**

Root khat lev bound root khat lev kariuna noun latkaeng kasiamh e.

Root		*Bount Root*		*Noun latkaeng*
thing	+	**nuy**	=	**thingnuy**
dui	+	**thuak**	=	**duithuak**
guh	+	**phic**	=	**guhphic**
Baanh	+	**laa**	=	**baanhlaa**

(b) Kabiswmei root khat khou ngangvlouna kariang naimei latkaeng guay kasiamhpat re.

kai twmei root hei sinswna kariang naimei latkaeng guay kasiamh e.

kai + kakhunc khatnamei	=	**kaikhunh**
kai + lunghmei luangc	=	**kailuangc**

kai + kaphwn	=	**kaiphwn**
kai + karei	=	**kairei**
kai + kalungc	=	**kailung**

lau twmei root hei sinswna kariang naimei latkaeng guay kasiamh e

lau + ramvrei	=	**laurei**
lau + daihmei zam	=	**lauzam**
lau + tatmei chaeng	=	**lauchaeng**
lau + kabaa	=	**laubaa**
lau + kapy	=	**laupy**

dui twmei root hei sinswna kariang naimei latkaeng guay kasiamh e.

dui + mpeih khw/chaeng	=	**duikhw**
dui + haan	=	**duihaan**
dui + lai	=	**duilai**
dui + buangh	=	**duibuangc**
dui + paan	=	**duipaan**
dui + lau bamv	=	**duilau**

(c) Patpui bamv - **source** theilayna latkaeng kasiamh e.

mik khou patmei **dui**	**mik**	**+ dui**	**= mikdui**
nouc khou patmei **dui**	**nouc**	**+ dui**	**= noucdui**
guaihnou khourui patmei **dui**	**guaihnou**	**+ dui**	**= guaihnoudui**
khuaihbou khourui patmei **dui**	**khuaih**	**+ dui**	**= khuaihdui**
thingkung khou naimei **dui**	**thingkung**	**+ dui**	**= thingkungdui**

(d) Root guay hei **mbai** bamna (left-headed) khatnic **nzat** bamna (right-headed) kabah baihmei noun latkaeng kasiamh e.

Root	*mbai bamna*	*nzat bamna*
kai	kaithing	thingkai
	kailat	latkai
	kaikhunh	khunhkai
lau	launap	naplau
	lauthing	thinglau
	laudui	duilau

dui	duimik	mikdui
	duilai	laidui
	duitu	tudui

Karuc khou latkaeng akumhna geicpat tu cho twmei khou mikzaw asaekc lou kan the. Mihei rui latkaeng chaapatmei lam khou lungning mikzaw asaekc thu tihowlou e twmei lwm e. Latkaeng kasiamhpatmei hamhethei duancpatmei hei affixation khatnic compounding na hei hamh e, process baihmei guay nic nai e. Tihkic mitei nzaengna thayguang pwni e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Word Formation tabui ta cho? Word formation khou kabiswmei kanei nai e. Tabui tabui tei cho?
2. Affixation tabui cho. Kazaat azuh nai cho? Hyna ndauh o.
3. Latkaeng duancpatmei khou Compounding twmei hei tabui ta cho? Latkamv tiina hy o.
4. Word formation sw o.

Prefixation	ganv
	bak
Suffixation	tat
	pak
Compounding	pui
	si

9.0 LATRIAN KATHAIMEI
(Sintax)

9.1.0 WORD ORDER

Syntax tabui ta cho?

Lat khat zamh latkaeng, latrian khat tangv khat nai bammei lwan, riak ta **syntax** kaw e. Mihei lat kaguayna khou nchamc mak ge, baic baic e. Lat lwnliak kathai kariangmei nunc rui lat zamh Phonology, Morphology khatnic Syntax - mi kathaek kathumh hei taangaymakna kathai e. Lat kaguayna zamh lwnliak nchamc mak ge. Lat khat lwnliak lev lat khat lwnliak baic baic e. Phonology khatnic Morphology thaek khou naimei lwnliak guay mi latrik zamh Reymei Latlangv khatnic Kaneimei Latlangv khou kathai kan the. Ntaw Sintax hei kathai kho.

Word Order tabui ta cho?

Latrian thaek khou naimei lwnliak twmei hei latrian khou nai bammei latkaeng khat tangv khat nsuk kariuloumei guay tei the. Mihei lat khat zamh sentence structure ta e. Latkamv khang saa pwkhou 'Ai kata thay e' twmei latrian khouhei naimei latkaeng khat tangv khat hei - subject - object - verb (SOV) nai e. Mihei Ruanglat lwnliak (structure) khat the. Duina khatnic chalahna saa pwkhou mihei Ruanglat zamh **word order** the. Mi kumhmei latrian thaek khou naimei Ruanglat lwnliak asaekc kabangc khou hylou e. Mi latrian lwnliak khou hei kazauh mak nuhmakmei langv na tei nchin tuang e. Tiilou bammei lwnliak khou hei parts of speech nchamcmei latkaeng guay rui kaphaan lynna, adjective, adverb, phrase azuh haaplouna latrian hei tisaengc tidaic bam sihnic, hamhethei, thanvmei latrian ngguanh pwkhou, kiuhamhmei, swmakmei khou ngguanh pwkhou kabiswmei lwnliak tei ngguanh makna nai muay ethei mi kumhmei latrian guay tei lwnliak khatna khou nai bam muay e twna laa pwni. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkamv guay khou hei zauc kho.

(a)	Latrian lwnliak =	Subject	-	object	-	verb (SOV).
		Ai	-	kata	-	thay e.

Mi lwnliak lev nchamcmei latrian asaekc -

Kabi nap tu e.
Kamei nah pangc e.
Abwanliu latrik pac e.
Mazahbi lau tat re.

Mi kumhmei guay hei karuc khou tiiloumei lwnliak nchamcmei latrian raana the.

(b) Latkaeng guay phrase khou ngguanhna tidaicpat nuh e:

Latkaeng guay ta phrase khou ngguanhlouna ' Ai kata thay e' tihei tidaicpat pwkhou ngguanh patmei latrian tei nic lwnliak nchamc rapmei latrian sw muay pwni de.

Ai/kata/thay e. (Subject-object-verb)

- Meic lwn amuc tanhmei ai/kalwn ngguanhna guangmei kata/thay e.

(b) Baihmei phrase haapkuanlouna tidaicpatmei:

Baihmei phrase haap kuanlouna kalwn kaliak naimei latrian khat ta tidaic pat nuh e.

Ai / kata / thay e. (Subject -object-verb)

- Mi pu tatei how raph pwkhou ai / kata / kalwn nthanna thay e.

(c) Thanvmei, kiuhamhmei, swmakmei latrian ngguanhpat sihnic kalwn kaliak thu kalaih mak ge twna laa e.

	Nang / kata / thay e.	(Subject-object-verb)
-	Nang / kata / thay bo ?	(Thanvmei thaymei)
-	Nang / kata / thay mec.	(Kiuhamhmei, swmakmei thaymei)
-	Nang / kata / thay mang ?	(Kiuhamhmei, swmakmei thaymei thanvmei)

(d) Ruanglat latrian asaekc lwnliak zauc kho.

(1) Mi hei latrik ge.	- Subject + noun + e
(2) Mazahbi namvpouc sw e.	- Subject + noun + verb + e
(3) Kamang guang e.	- Subject + verb + e
(4) Kamei katan rui tat re.	- Subject + instrumental + verb + e.
(5) Kamei akhou phey tei tii e.	- Subject+dative+object+ verb + e.
(6) Kabigay kaithyan thurui guang e.	- Subject + ablative + verb + e.
(7) Mi hei atuang latrik ge.	- Subject + genetive + noun + e.
(8) Kamei rui kakai tho puatc tei phungctat khwan e.	- Subject+locative+object+ verb+ tense + e.

9.2.0 LATCHUAM (Phrase)

Latrian thu hamhmei, subject, verb ntangh makmei, latkaeng chuam khat rui parts of speech khat taanv taanc ethei mi tatei PHRASE kaw e. Kumna nic saa nuh e - latkaeng khat phaan latkaeng chuam khat sinswna saa nuh ethei mi latkaeng chuam khat tei **phrase** sw e.

Latkamv : -

(a) Si guang e.

(b) Si mumei khat guang e.

(c) Dowlaaneic howmei si tei guang e.

(a) khou 'si' hei noun e, mihei verb 'guang e' zamh subject sw e.

(b) khou 'si' twmei phaan hei 'si mumei khat' twmei kariumei latkaeng chuam hei 'guang e' twmei verb zamh subject sw e.

(c) khou 'Dowlaaneic howmei si tei' hei rui 'guang e' twmei verb zamh subject sw e.

(b) lev (c) zamh latkaeng chuam kanei "si mumei khat, doulaaneic howmei si tei"hei 'si' twmei noun phaan lynna noun taanv taanc e. Kumna mi latchuam khat khat hei **phrase** the.

Ruanglat khou **phrase** hei kazaat kathumh nai e.

(1) Noun Phrase
(2) Adjective Phrase
(3) Adverb Phrase

9.2.1 Noun Phrase (Noun Latchuam)

Noun taanv taanhmei phrase ta Noun Phrase kaw e. Latkamv khang, kabangc khou riatloumei guay hei Noun Phrase the.

Subject swna	- Kalwn thay makmei meic khat guang e.
Object swna	- Dowlaaneic guang mei nac tei ai thay e.
Compliment swna	- Kamei kapumc gaypui mei e.
Case nchamcmei noun khat lev dacna	- Kalung gaymei pam, Kabipou guang e.

9.2.2 Adjective phrase (Adjective Latchuam)

Adjective taanv taanhmei phrase ta Adjective Phrase kaw e. Latkamv khang, kabangc khou riatloumei guay hei Adjective Phrase the.

Noun zamh gunc ndauhpatmei swna

(a) Lauluangc pak tanc liangmei alauc tei guang e.

(b) Kalwn gaymei tunacpui tei mic kan the.

9.2.3 Adverbial Phrase (Adverb Latchuam)

Adverb taanv taanhmei phrase ta Adverb Phrase kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Gaychuy guang raphpui lev nang tat nuh the.

(b) Kabi guangmei ganv khoutei kamei nic guang the.

(c) Ai tatloulou khou nang nzwan bam hei akumhna cho?

(d) Nang Tamenglong District kadai khourui guang tuang dai?

(e) Kamei pheybaan guay ta kaan kaanna tat kan e.

(f) Gaylaapou taanv tei chariakh chuy hakna taanc kan e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Syntax tabui ta cho?
2. Word Order tabui ta cho?
3. Phrase tabui tai cho? Latkamv tiina daw o.
4. Noun Phrase piupui bamv saa o. Lat kamv tiina daw o.
5. Kabangc khou hyloumei phrase guay hei tabui tabui phrase cho? Kalam tiina dinc o.
   a) Ai kalung siipui mei kamei ta ariu nii mak ge.
   b) Mihei nang-ai rui ngammei taanv hamh e.
   c) Kaniw kapwmna tat kan the.
6. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khouhei rui Adjective Phrase kapahpat ro.
   a) Nang nang pumc rui ngam lak nimei taanv khat sinic taanh riu.

9.3.0 LATRIANNAC (Clause)

Latrian khat lungc khou , subject, verb zaumei **Latriannac** khat naimei hamhethei latrian zamh kadam khat swna l*atrian launa* naimei ta **Clause** kaw e.

Kamei guang pwni twmei ai thay e.
Mi latrian khouhei latrian launa kanei zau e-

a) Ai thay e, b) kamei guang pwni twmei.
Kumna mi latrian khouhei **clause** (latriannac) kanei nai e. Mi clause kanei khouhei 'Ai thay e' twmei hei karaana nyngthav swna ding ngammei kabah patmei clause e. Mi kumhmei clause tihei nyngthav swmei hamhethei kadai swmei clause kaw e.

Karaana nyngthav swna ding ngammei, kabah patmei clause ta Nyngthav Swmei Clause (Nyngthavswmei Latriannac) kaw e.

(b) Khatdat rui, 'Kamei guang pwni twmei' clause hei tho nyngthav swmei clause kazauh mak gethei karaana ding pwkhou kabah pat suak mak ge, nthuih mak ge. Mi kumhmei clause ti hei kathei laymei clause hamh ethei kabangc bammei clause twna thay e.

Karaana ding pwkhou kabah pat makmei, suakdik makmei clause ta Subordinate Clause kaw e.

Ruanglat khou clause kathumh nai e - Noun Clause, Adjective Clause, khatnic Adverb Clause mi guay hei e. Mi clause guay hei khat khat swna kathai kho.

9.3.1 Noun Clause

Noun taanv taanhmei clause ta Noun Clause kaw e. Kabangc khou tiiloumei latkamv guay hei zauc kho. Noun Clause guay kabangc khou riatlou e.

(a) Subject swna -

Kamei khuay maek ge twmei hei nchumh e.

- Nang rui kalwn thay e twmei mei tei guang the.

(b) Objective swna -

Kamei meigaymei e twmei tei ai rui saa tuang e.

- Nchamnac tei school khoutei ncham bam e twmei hei aniu thay mak ge.

(c) Noun khat lev khatna swna bam kariuna bamdahmei
- Kamei tat kan the twmei chamv hei nkhuaimei de.

9.3.2 Adjective Clause

Adjective taanv taanhmei clause ta Adjective Clause kaw e. Tiiloubamei latrian guay khouhei kabangc khou riatloumei clause guay hei Adjective Clause the.

(a) Nang rui kahaw e twmei latrik tei ai phungcguang the.

(b) Lungcgay hak ge twmei mei kiu thow cho?

9.3.3 Adverbial Clause

Adverb taanv taanhmei clause ta Adverbial Clause kaw e. Tiiloubammei latrian guay khouhei kabangc khou riatloumei guay hei adverb clause the.

(a) Verb taanv zamh ganv dinhmei -
- Khuangh panguh key the twmei ganv khou nang guang tho.

(b) Verb taanv bamv dinhmei -
- Nang rui ariu kho twmei bamv khou ai guang pwng e.

(c) Verb taanc gwan dinhmei -
- Kamei rui nchumh e twmei thayna taanv taanc e.

(d) Adjective zamh kagat dinhmei -
- Nang rui gay liang the twna saamei puat tei kahaw e.

(e) Verb taanv lam dinhmei -
- Nang rui nzian mec twmei zaengrui kamei guang mak tuang e.

9.4.0 LATRIAN (Sentences)

Ruanglat khou latrian hei kazaat kathumh nai e. Miguay kiu thu **Simple Sentence** (Chalahmei Latrian), **Complex Sentence** (Alamvmei Latrian) khatnic **Compound Sentence** (Kariumei Latrian) - miguay hei e.

(a) Simple Sentence (Chalahmei Latrian)

Subject khat verb khat kazauhmei latrian ta Chalahmei Latrian kaw e. Hamhethei subject khat predicate khat kazauhmei latrian ta chalahmei latrian kawe.

Latkamv :-

(a) Kamei aseic guang e.

(b) Kaniw aseic kaithyan tat pwni.

(c) Nang tat tho.

(b) Complex Sentence (Alamvmei Latrian)

'Tingzyn key pwkhou kaniw nthaekc khwan e.'

Mi latrian khouhei latrian kanei nai e -

(i) Tingzyn key pwkhou, (ii) Kaniw nthaekc khwan e.

Mi nei hei 'kaniw nthaekc khwan the' hei nthuihmei latrian khat re, main clause the, tihkic tingzyn key pwkhou' hei tho karaana ding ngammak ge. Kumna nthuihmei latrian hamh e. Kumna nyngsw makmei dependent hamhethei subordinate clause khat sw e. Mi kumhmei latrian tihei Complex Sentence kaw e.

Nyng swmei main clause khat zaumei, nyngswmakmei dependent hamh ethei subordinate clause khat, hamhethei khat khangsuangc geicna zaumei latrian ta Complex Sentence kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Nang rui tat kho twmei tei ai thay e.

(b) Nang guang nimei ganv khou kiu ai nkhwan bam pwni.

(c) Kamei saa dat dat bam thena ai kakhou tiilou kan the.

(c) Compound Sentence (Kariumei Latrian)

'Bwkaanv gaanc e khatnic aniu chaeng how ngam e.'

Mi latrian hei kalangv kanei pat re - (i) Bwkaanv gaanc e, (ii) Aniu chaeng how ngam e.

Mi latrian kanei tihei conjunction 'khatnic' rui zay kariulou e. Latrian kalangv kanei hei subject khat, predicate khat nai ngam e, karaa karaana ding sihnic kabah tii ngam e, khat khat hei nyngswmei Main Clause khat khat re. Kumna **Main Clause kanei hamhethei kanei mbumei latrian guay duanc kariuloumei ta Compound Sentence (Kariumei latrian) kaw e.**

Karaa Karaana hamhethei kabah tii ngammei chalahmei latrian kanei kathumh kariuna duanc kariuloumei ta kariumei latrian kaw e.

Latkamv -

(1) Zingckei khwan the khatnic tingriu ranvkey the kumna aniw zuat ngam khwan the.

(2) Ai nang chaic ta thu thay mak ge tihkic nang ta thu thay kumcna puat guay hei nang khou nsinlou the.

(3) Kamang tei rah ranvsih e kumna aniw zipkey ping the tihkic aniu daeng khou thu guangmak ge.

(c) Chalahmei latkaeng guay kariuna latrian duanhmei

Subject khatnic verb kalwn howpat makpui zaengrui latrian khat ta chalahmei latrian e twna laa nlaanh nuh e. Kumhpui zaengrui latrian guay kariuna duanhmei *latrian kasiamhmei lwan* kabangc khou hyloumei hei kathai zauc o.

Compound Sentence (Kariumei Latrian) Kasiamhmei -

(1) Verb nchamc raphrapmei ethei khat laaganc pwni.

(i) Kasangay guang e, (ii) Kadwmpou guang e.

= Kasangay lev Kadwmpou guang e.

(2) Subject kapumc khatna ethei khat laaganc pwni.

(i) Kadwnzik latrik pac e, (iii) Kadwnzik tatdyn hy e.

= Kadwnzik latrik pac e khatnic tatdyn hy e.

(3) Object Kazaat khatna ethei khat laaganc pwni.

(i) Howgayliu rui tingthai laaguang e,

(ii) Gaichuylou rui tingthai tu e.

= Howgayliu rui tingthai laaguang e khatnic Gaychuyliu rui tu e.

(4) Kaganv thaymei nchamc ethei khat laaganc pwni.

(i) Kamei nthuanh lauthuan guang pwni.,
(ii) Ai nthuan lauthuan tat pwni.

= Kamei nthuanh lauthuan guang pwni khatnic ai tat puni.

(5) Object khatnic verb nchamcmei raana ethei object khat, verb khat laaganc pwni.

(i) Kalungthay ntyan tu e. (ii) Kazaigay ntyan tu e.
= Kalungthay lev Kazaigay ntyan tu e.

Complex Sentence *(alamvmei latrian) khou nyngswmei Clause khat, khourui Subordinate Clause khat hamh ethei khat khangsuangc geicna zau e.*

Compound Sentence *(Kariumei latrian) khouhei chalahmei latrian guay duanc kariulou tuang e, hamh ethei alamvmei latrian guay kariulou tuang e.*

KATHAIDWAN

1. Clause tabui ta cho? Clause lev phrase tabui khiantnah bo? Latkamv tiina hy o.
2. Subordinate clause tabui ta cho? Kazaat azuh nai bo? Lat kamv tiina hy o.
3. Noun clause, adjective clause khatnic adverb clause zamh latkamv khat khat hy o.
4. Latrian zaat azuh nai bo? Tabui tabui tei cho?
5. Complex Sentence akumhmei ta cho?
6. Compound Sentence kalwn dinc o.

10.0 KACHUC BAMMEI LATRIAN ZAAT
(Functional Types of Sentences)

Ruanglat khou latrian hei kakang kanei patna zauc nuh e - (1) **Kalwnlung Latrian** khatnic (2) **Kariumei Latrian** - mi nei hei e.

Tingmik pum kalwnlung kachuc bammei latrian kazaat padeih nai e. Miguay kabangc khou kalangv kalangv swna hylou e.

10.1.0 Declarative Sentence (Chalahna Ndauhpatmei Latrian)

Nsamv pariathriatna chalahna lat khat ndauhpatmei latrian - kalingmei ny kalingmei hamh ny lat khat nsamvpariatna saa ndauhpatmei latrian nai e.

Latkamv khang -

(i) Ai lau tat re.

(ii) Dui bun nkhan kan the.

(iii) Ai mitei thay e.

(iv) Mihei gaymei hypei e.

Mikumhmei guay tihei chalahna nsamvpariatna saapatmei **Declarative Sentence** twna kaw e.

10.2.0 Negative Sentence (Hamhmei Ndauhmei Latrian)

Lat khat saapatmei khou kiuc hamhmei, nuhmakmei, maekmei ndauhmei latrian nai e.

Latkamv khang :-

(i) Khouhei kai maek ge.

(ii) Kamei kai khou bammak ge.

(iii) Mitei kaniw tuang hamh e.

(iv) Ai nkhuaimei lat saa lak ge.

Mi kumhmei maekmei, swmakmei, hamhmei ndauhmei latrian tatei **Negative Sentence** kaw e.

(i) 'maek' hei noun thei khou

sinsw e = Nap maek khe.

(ii) 'mak' hei verb thei khou

sinsw e = Ai agaih tu mak ge.

(iii) 'kiu, kiu e' zamh nchoumei (opposite) khou 'hamh' sinsw e.

= Atuang hamh e. Kabi hamh e, Gaylaa de.

(iv) 'lak' hei guangni ganv (future) negative mark swna sinsw e.

Ai taanc dat lak khe.

Kamei guang pwlak khe.

10.3.0 Interogative Sentence (Thanvmei Latrian)

Aniw rui ramh khat lam thay niimei ganv khou thanv e, lathanv sinswna latsaa e.

Latkamv khang :-

(i) Tabui thu tat tu cho?

(ii) Akumhpui lat cho?

(iii) Nang gayna bam dai ?

(iv) Mwnpwang gay hak ge, gaymakna?

(v) Nap tu tang tha, tu mak hai?

(vi) Khoutei hypei nai bo, maekna?

Ruanglat khou 'tabui, akumh, thow, cho, bo, tha, dai' mi kumhmei guay hei piuna thanvmei latrian kasiamh e. Mi kumhmei latrian guay tihei thanvmei latrian **Interogative Sentence** twna kaw e.

Ruanglat khou Thanvmei Negative latrian khou 'mak' phaan 'mang' khatnic lak phaan 'lang' sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Nang phey tei laa ny laa mang?

(b) Nang taanv tei taanc ni ny taanc lang?

Mang khatnic lang zamh latdaw swna daw pwkhou 'mec' khat nic "lec" sinsw e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Nang phey tei laa ny laa mang?

Dawmei - Ai laa mec.

(b) Nang taanv tei taanc ni ny taanc lang?

Dawmei - Ai taanc lec.

10.4.0 Imperative Sentence (Thouhmei Latrian)

Ruanglat khou 'tat ro, guang o, taanc o, sw o' piuna lat saamei, thouhmei, katiumei, latdanv tiimei latrian sinsw e. Mi kumhmei latrian tatei **Imperative Sentence** kaw e.

Latkamv :-

(i) Nchamkai tho tat ro.

(ii) Adaeng khou guang o.

(iii) Laamh chadaa o.

(iv) Nkhuaimei lat saa riu.

(v) Ravguangc rui nang ta nduanghlou diu o.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Kachuc bammei latrian zaat twmei hei tabui ta cho ?
2. Kachuc bammei latrian zaat azuh nai cho ? Tabuibui tei cho ?
3. Kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei tabuibui latrian cho ? Dinc o.
   - (a) Ai lau tat re. _____
   - (b) Ai nkhuaimei lat saa lak ge. _____
   - (c) Nang gayna bam dai ? _____
   - (d) Laamh chadaa o. _____

11.0 KIDAAMEI GAT
(Degree of Comparison)

11.1.0 KIDAAMEI GAT (Degree of Comparison)

Simei, gaymei, ndeihmei, nkhucmei, saenghmei, duimei, katumcmei, nzaengmei, taanhmei, ruaihmei - mikumhmei guay hei kidaana saa nuh e.

Latkamv khang -

sii e, sii hian e, sii liang e

dui e, dui hian e, dui liang e

tanc e, tanc hian e, tanc liang e.

- Mi kumhmei guay tihei **Kidaamei Gat,** Degree of Comparison kaw e.

Degree of Comparison hei kagat kathumh nai e. Mi kiu thu Positive Degree, Comparative Degree khatnic Superlative Degree - mi kathumh hei e.

Latkamv khang -

Postive Degree	*Comparative Degree*	*Superlative Degree*
Anipou dui e.	Anipou khangsuangc	Gayku dui liang e.
(khatna)	Dwanrey dui hian e. *(kanei kak khou)*	*(Meic pangc khou)*

Kumna aniw rui thay e. Mikiu thu -

positive degree - **dui** e (khat na ta)
comparative degree - **dui hian** e (kanei kak khou)

superlative degree - **dui liang** e (kaguayna pangc khou)

Mi tihei Kidaamei Gat, Degree of Comparison kaw e.

Degree of Comparison hei kazaat kanei nai e, mikiu thu **Adjective Degree** khatnic **Adverbial Degree** - mi nei hei e.

11.2.0 ADJECTIVE DEGREE

Adjective zamh degree tei kabangc khou hyloumei latrian guay hei zaucna kathai kho.

(a) Lwmgay tuang abahthai ndeih e.
(b) Kataapou tuang abahthai Lwmgay tuang khangsuangc ndeih hian e.
(c) Mary tuang abahthai ndeih liang e.

Latrian (a) khouhei Lwmgay tuang abahthai *ndeih e* twmei hei e - tihkic adih kamv ndeih cho twmei thu saa mak ge.

Latrian (b) khou Kataapou tuang abahthai khang suangc *ndeih hian e* - twmei hei e. Lwmgay tuang lev Kataapou tuang abahthai tei kidaana saa e.

Latrian (c) khou Mary tuang abahthai hei kaguayna pangc khou *ndeih liang e* twmei hei e.

Kumna mi latrian kathumh khouhei kidaamei degree kathumh howpat re - ndeih e, ndeih hian e, ndeih liang e - twmei hei e. Mihei kabangc khou hyloumei kumcna zauc nuh e.

Adjective '*ndeih*' ti hei **Positive Degree** twna thay e.

Adjective '*ndeih hian*' tihei **Comparative Degree** twna thay e

Adjective '*ndeih liang*' tihei **Superlative Degree** twna thay e.

Kabangc khou adjective zamh kidaamei asaekc zauc kho.

Positive Degree	***Comparative Degree***	***Superlative Degree***
Guinaipou tanc e.	Kabipou tanc hian e.	Kasangay tanc liang e.
Mazahbi mpang e.	Kailaagay mpang hian e.	Katabwan mpang liang e.
Pheibuay nthaan e.	Langhpanv nthaan hian e.	Luikangc nthaan liang e.
Daandi gay e.	Kachaekc gay hian e.	Kaphut gay liang e.

Karuc khou kathaimei khouhei howpat re. Mikiu thu tanc, mpang, nthaan, dui, gay, ndeih, guay hei noun zamh gunc ta ndauh e, mi guay hei adjective e. Mi degree of comparison khouhei Positive Degree latrian khou adjective tangv 'e' guang e, latkaeng baihmei guang mak ge. Comparative Degree latrian khou adjective tangv **'hian, hian'** haap guang e, Superlative Degree latrian khou adjective tangv **'liang, liang'** hei haap guang e. Kumna 'tanc e, tanc hian e, tanc liang e' twna adjecdtive zamh chaengc, gat tei ndauh e. Mi kumhmei **adjective zamh kachaengc, kagat kidaana dinhmei tihei Adjective Degree twna kaw e.**

11.3.0 ADVERBIAL DEGREE:

Adjective zamh degree naimei kumcna Adverb zamh Positive Degree, Comparative Degree khatnic Superlative Degree nai muay e.

Latkamv khang kabangc khouhei zauc kho

Positive Degree	***Comparative Degree***	***Superlative Degree***
Achwn tat katumc e.	Adai tat katumc hian e.	Abi tat katumc liang e.
Azuna gari thou ranv e.	John gari thou ranv hian e.	Kabi gari thou ranv liang e.
Guaiphuap tat nzaeng e.	Kupui tat nzaeng hian e.	Tanyang tat nzaeng liang e.
Si pak khap e.	Asanh pak khap hian e.	Kamang pak khap liang e.

Karuc khou kathaimei khouhei howpat re. Mikiu thu Comparative Degree khou adjective tangv hian, hian haap guang e, Superlative Degree khou adjective tangv hei **liang, liang** hei haap guang e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Degree of Comparison tabui ta cho? Degree of Comparison gat kathaek azuh nai cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
2. Degree of Comparison kazaat azuh cho? Tabui tabui tei cho?
3. Adjective Degree tabui ta cho? Adjective Degree kathumh lwn tei hyna nchin o.
4. Kabangc khou hyloumei hei taanc suak go

Positive Degree	*Comparative Degree*	*Superlative Degree*
Gay	_____	_____
Nchumh	_____	_____
Si	_____	_____

5. Adverb Degree tabui ta cho? Adverb Degree kathumh lwn hyna nchin o.
6. Kabangc khou hyloumei hei taanc suak go.

Positive Degree	Comparative Degree	Superlative Degree
Katumc e	_____	_____
Ranv e.	_____	_____
Tanc e.	_____	_____

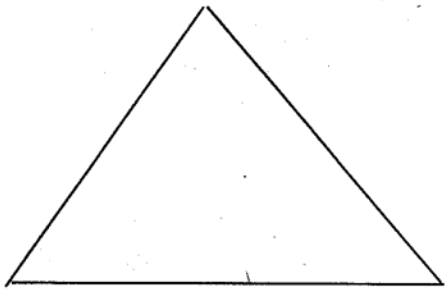
12.0 KABAH
(Semantic)

Aniw rui lungning khou makumhmei tei ndauhpat khang lat hei sinsw e. Sinsw bammei lat kabah kiu tho lungning khou makumh bammei tei the. Kumhpui zaengrui 'kabah' twmei kiu puatc khat ta kumcna kalwn nchin ngammak ge.

Aniw rui puatc guay zanc phuaklou e, kawlou e. Latkamv khang saa pwkhou, aniw rui 'dui' twmei latkaeng hei puatc akhat zanc swna kawlou the. 'Dui' twmei latkaeng hei saa pwkhou hamhethei hy pwkhou 'dui' kawmei puat ta tei thaynah e. Tihkic, 'dui' twmei latkaeng kabah hei tabui cho twethei akumhna daw nina ? 'Dui' twmei latkaeng hei saa pwkhou hamhethei chu pwkhou lungning khou makumhmei, - mi puat tei lev kariang naimei lungning khou makumhna thaymei khat pat re. **Mi makumhna thaymei tei e kabah twmei kiu.** Kumhpui zaengrui puatc, latkaeng khatnic kabah - mi kathumh hei kariang nai e. Latkaeng tei lev kariang naimei puatc tei lev kariu lana lungning khou ningpatmei makum tei mi latkaeng zamh kabah kiu the twna saa nii e. Kumna thaurey douc rui lwnliak naimei puatc zamh kabah hei kabangc khou hyloumei hei kumcna nchin guang e.

12.1.0 Latkaeng Kabah

Latkaeng Kabah
(Lungning khou Makumhmei)



Latkaeng Lwnliak

Puatc hamhethei
kariang naimei makum

Kalwn kaliak nai thuai makmei, lungning makum khou na naimei latkaeng guay twmei thu daihmei, nthyammei, kheyliak, swchuymei - mi kumhmei latkaeng guay kabac hei akumhna karuc khou hyloumei maengc hei rui dinc nuh

nina cho ? Aniw rui 'swchuymei' twmei latkaeng hei saa pwkhou khatnic chu pwkhou latkaeng hei lev kariang naimei maansei kheyliak asaekc lungning makum rui thay raph tw e. Mi kumhmei kheyliak tei nic hylou bammei maengc 'puatc' twmei tei the twna saa khang di the. Kumhpui zaengrui 'puatc' twmei hei 'swchuymei' twmei latkaeng hei lev, mi latkaeng zamh kabah tei lev kariang naimei kheyliak tatei nic tian twna thay e twna laapui tac di the.

12.2.0 Kabah Zaat

Kabah hei kazaat geic e. Mi khouhei kabiswna kabah zaat chanei lam khou kathai kho. Kazaat chanei kiu tho - (1) Kabiswmei puiruhnac rui thay bammei kabah, (2) Puatc gunc zauc lana laamei kabah, (3) Charay swmei kabah, (4) Latkaeng lukaeng rui ndauhmei kabah, (5) Makumh baicna laamei kabah, (6) Latkaeng baihmei lev kariu khourui patmei kabah khatnic (7) Saa niimei lam lev kariang naimei kabah.

12.2.1 Kabi swmei puiruhnac rui thaymei *kabah*

Latkaeng khatnic latrian zamh kabiswmei puiruhnac rui thay bammei chalahmei, nkun nkev makmei, nsamvpariatna ndauhpatmei kabah nai e. Mihei maansei swmei lungning ndauh pat khang kabiswmei thiak ge. Kabah hei latkaeng thaek khou, latkaeng tei lev kariang naimei puat lwnliak, kagunc nchamc makmei naimei - mi kumhmei khourui thay ngam e.

Latkamv: -

Karacpeic = maansei +nggaanvmei hamhmei + gaanthauh.
Nggaanv = maansei + nggaanvmei + gaanthauh hamhmei.

Mi latkaeng kanei zamh kagunc kathumh hei kidaa pwkhou khatna thu nchamc lana kanei thu nchamc mak ge. Mi kumcna khiannahmei naimei khouhei rui karacpeic lev nggaanv kaney zamh kabah nchamc makmei naimei thay ngam e.

Latrian thaek khou - latkaeng zamh morpheme khatnic phoneme thaek khou swbak pwkhou katuang katuang kabah tei kalwnlung swna nai e, khatnic latkaeng thaek khou zauc pwkhou subject, object, verb kumhmei hei latriak theilayna kalwan chaana hui kariulou pwkhou puiruhnac rui thaymei kabah tei laatow e.

Latkamv :-

Ai kata thay e = subject + object + verb

12.2.2 Puatc gunc zaucna laatowmei kabah

Ramh khat ta thaymei latkaeng khat hei mi ramhkhat kahak hamhna puatc zamh kagunc lev kariang tinailouna laamei kabah nai e.

Latkamv :-

Gaythuih hei kuanniam di the.

Mi latrian khou naimei 'kuanniam' hei meicguayna rui thay bammei kuanniam zamh kabah tei hamh e. Kuanniam gunc azuh nai e khaengvlouthaymei, latpiumei, mpangmei, mikumhmei guay hei e. Gaythuih hei kuanniam kumcna mpang e twmei kabac lev nchamcna saamei latrian bam nuh e. Kumethei kuanniam kabac hei puatc gunc zauc lana laamei kabah e. Mi kumhmei kabah hei kaganv kaganv theilayna, charuangc khatnic chapriak theilayna nchamc makmei nai e.

12.2.3 Charay, karaana zamh kabah

Lat khat khou limhmei azuh nai e. Latkamv khang saa kho. *Kamei nwm tatmei e. Kai rui nkay e. Pwangringh zaw hownii e.* Mi latrian guay khou 'nwm tatmei' hei nwmbangc ngouhbangc tatmei ta hamh e - mbinh rihou ta e; 'kai' twmei hei lunghmei kai ta hamh e - chanaa-punav, meicbaih hamhmei ta e; 'pwangringh' twmei hei nwmbangc khou thaumei kathai haenghmei bang tatei hamh e - nzian-nguihmei nggaanvpu ta e.

Kaganv lev kariang naimei khou 'nthei, hu' hei guangni ganv ta thaymei khou nic sinsw e, tatkan ganv ta thaymei khou nic sinsw e. Latbamv latbamv thei layna kabah tei thay e.

12.2.4 Latsav-luswan rui ndauhmei kabah

Lat hei saathay mak pwkhou gay hakmei lat sihnic siimei kabac khou laalou nuh e. Lunghpuamcna, mphutna saamei latkaeng hei kabah baicna ndauhmei nai e - gaymei lat tei siimei kabac khou saa e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Nang hei, zouh mbaana chaengluang khou kahai tat bam rapna, howgay the da ! Meic zaw gay dyng the.
(Zaucnii makna, howsii e, meic zawsii e twna saamei)

(b) Eh , nang hei aheih dyng the he, thay dyng the he.
(Thaypui lwn swmei ta mphutna saamei)

(c) Nangniw rui huayneylou khourui ai gay dat the.
(Thuanckuna, kwnna saamei)

Karuc khou (a) khou 'howgay the' hei howsii e twtuang e, 'zaw gay the' twmei hei zaw sii e twtuang e. (b) khou 'aheih dyng the, thay dyng the' hei aheih changh the, thay changh the twtuang hamh e. (c) khou huayneyloumei nunc ta thuanckuna saa tuang e. Kamei gay datmei hei 'huayneylou khourui' bam nuh e, puc tu tina gay dat bam tuang kho nic nuh e.

Kumna latkaeng kabac hei mphutna saamei, nuinuna saamei, zaenghuayna saamei khatnic thuanckuna saamei latsav-luswan theilayna latkaeng zamh kabah baic baicna pat nuh e.

12.2.5 Lungning makum baihmei khat khou laamei kabah

Lat saamei khou hamhethei latrik hymei khou lungning makum akhat ndauhpat pwkhou nkingmei hamhethei pahmei rui baihmei makum khou laatowmei kabac nai e. Hymei (poet) rui latkaeng khat sinswna hy pwkhou kabah baicna laa nuhmei latkaeng azuh nic nai e. Charuangc khou saasipui lat tei ntheihna saapui latkaeng azuh nai e. Mikumhmei ta thaymei lungning makum guay ta 'kabah baihmei khat khou laamei' twna thay e.

Latkamv :-

(a) Kamei ramhchaeng tat kan di he. = (latrine gutmei).

(b) Kanow ganthiangc bam e. = (nah puanhmei)

(c) 'Songs of Solomon' kawmei latrik hei meic meic thei layna kabah baic baicna pacpat nuh e

- Hymeipu Solomon kapumc kahak lungning makum,
- Ravchap dinhmei nunc lungning makum,
- Pahmei chabwan nunc lungning makum.

12.2.6 Latkaeng baihmei lev kariu khourui patmei kabah

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latrian guay hei zauc kho.

(a) Mi ramc khoutei meic kathw kathamv sihnic how mak ge.

(b) Pei khou tunaa-pangna lat zaat saa riu.

(c) Thanchuyliu tho zeithangc khat di the.

Mi latrian guay khouhei -

(a) khou 'kathw kathamv' twmei hei 'howmak ge' lev kariuna 'khatsihnic bam mak ge' twmei kabac tipat re.

(b) khou 'tuna-pangna' twmei hei 'lat zaat' lev kariu pwkhou 'kachangc kadi makmei lat' twmei kabac tipat re.

(c) khou tunacpui 'Thanchuyliu' lev 'zeithangc khav' kariuna 'meic laatow thuy makmei, kagunc kagac naimei tunacpui e' twmei kabac tipat re.

12.2.7 Dictionary zamh kabah khatnic Grammar zamh kabah

Lat lwnliak, structure kathaimei nunc rui kabah tihei 'dictionary zamh kabah' khatnic 'grammar zamh kabac' twna baic baic tipat re. Grammar zamh kabac tihei kalwn kaliak kabac twna nic thay e.

Kabiswmei parts of speech zamh latkaeng guay kabac ta dictionary zamh kabah kaw e. Kabi swraumei grammar category guay kabac ta grammar zamh kabah kaw e. Grammar zamh kabah twmei khou hei kabangc khou tiiloumei guay hei kazauh e.

(a) Tense, number, case kumhmei kabi swraumei grammar category guay kabac.

(b) Subject, object, kagunc ndauhmei - mi kumhmei grammar rui tiimei kabac.

(c) nchumhna lungning makum ndauhmei, thanvmei, latthouhmei, zaenghuaymei - mi guay ta thaymei khatnic latrian kazaat tipatmei - mi kumhmei guay kabac.

Dictionary zamh kabah twmei hei kabi swmei parts of speech latkaeng guay karaana zamh naimei kabac tatei e. *Grammar zamh kabah* twmei hei rui latkaeng khou khatnic latrian khou sinsw keymei ganv khou ndauhpatmei kabac ta tei e.

Latkamv :-

Katuang latrik amaan kan the.
Mi latrian khouhei -
Dictionary zamh kabah naimei latkaeng guay = *kamei, latrik, amaan*
Grammar zamh kabac naimei langv = *tuang* (kaipouc thaymei kabac), = *kan the* (perfect aspect).

Kumna 'Katuang' genetive case re, 'latrik' twmei hei verb zamh subject ge. 'amaan' twmei hei verb, 'kan the' twmei heirui perfect aspect e twna thay bammei hei nic grammar zamh kabah kiu e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Latkaeng zamh kabah twmei hei tabui ta cho? Hyna dinc nthanc o.
2. Kabiswmei kabah zaat chanei nai e. Miguay kiu tabui tabui tei cho?
3. Kabiswmei puiruhnac rui thaymei 'kabah' twmei hei tabui ta cho? Mi kumhmei kabac hei latkaeng thaek khou khatnic latrian thaek khou aniw rui akumhna thay tu cho?
4. Kabangc khou tiiloumei kabah zaat guay zamh latkamv khat khat tii o.
   (a) Puatc gunc zauc lana laatowmei kabah;
   (b) Charay swmei, karaana zamh kabah;
   (c) Latsav-luswan rui ndauhmei kabah;
   (d) Lungning makum baihmei khat khou laamei kabah;
   (e) Latkaeng baihmei lev kariu khourui patmei kabah.
   (f) Saa nimei lam lev kariang naimei kabah
5. Dictionary zamh kabah khatnic grammar zamh kabah twmei kanei hei latkamv tiina khiannahmei dinc o.

13.0 Synonym, Antonym lev Homonym

13.1.0 Kabah Nchamcmei Latkaeng
(Synonyms)

nrwanmei	-	puanghmei
riliuc	-	tunacpui
pamvzwna	-	nah
phyan-ryan	-	nchamcmei pam
raenghbangc	-	kaidaeng
laulwan	-	lauchaeng
kaithei	-	kailat
kaihu	-	kaimav
kariumei	-	ntinmei
khwmswmei	-	nowkawmei, mihmei
tampy	-	kaikhun
gin	-	tasangmei
chagai chaguymei	-	kamunsuhmei
meic baih hamhmei	-	kai khatnamei
naaraa	-	alauc
lanv	-	khiwkhingh
lauhmei	-	tumei
lawmei	-	khaenghmei
mphaanmei	-	nthyammei
laupuk	-	lauzaengc
tatmei	-	kummei
si	-	raenghbungh

13.2.0 Latkaeng Kabah Nchoumei
(Antonyms)

alauc	-	gaanthauh
karacpouc	-	karacpeic
pui	-	pu
pouh	-	neih
ntumei	-	nggaanvmei
chaphwmmei luc	-	chaphwmmei khangc
tunacpui	-	nggaanvpu

daihmei	-	nthyammei
nsunhmei	-	pariuhmei
saenghmei	-	duimei
nchumei	-	chaenghmei
ndeihmei	-	nkhucmei
bumhmei	-	nsamvmei
ntakmei	-	mpangmei
ningtyngmei	-	ngganghmei/pagimei
ting	-	mpwan
dui	-	mai
minhmei	-	nzimei
ntakmei	-	nggungmei
thing	-	tauh
rui	-	riang
mpeih	-	nriangc
kakw	-	kagaamc
kagi	-	kathing
kalat	-	kalu
Guaipuang	-	takuanh
kamang	-	chagamh
suc	-	zouc
nkhuaih	-	nrik
si	-	guak
tingpuk	-	kandih
tingkauh	-	maikwam
mbaanv	-	taruaih
bw	-	neih
gaanhmei	-	zinghmei
lauthwan	-	tingzyn
kalaan	-	zingbangc
gaymei	-	siimei
latpiumei	-	latliammei
ntwnmei	-	mbehmei

ntyngmei	-	nkuanmei
nzihmei	-	nkhuaimei
nzih zunhzunmei	-	nkhuai palatmei
phay	-	baanh
nzat	-	mbai
bi	-	ruh
nap	-	gan
napkuak	-	gankuak
tam	-	chaamphut
ntey	-	thaisuh
tumei	-	zangvmei
kadukkeymei	-	ngguakcpatmei
phaaloumei	-	nlicpatmei
nkhuai	-	nzih
khuay	-	zi
nchumhmei	-	nkhuaimei
kai	-	lau
kai	-	saamh
kailuangc	-	rwan
kai phui bangc	-	nwm bangc
kaithei	-	kaihu
kabangc	-	karuc
kakhum	-	kathi

13.3.0 Latkaeng Nchamc ki Kabah Baihmei
(Homonyms)

Kang	-	kapang
kang	-	(si) kang
kang	-	kang - *kang loumei (meic ta)*
khaa	-	(pykhaa) khaa
khaa	-	khaa luai
khav	-	dui khou bammei khav
khav	-	thaengv

khuaih	-	kasat naimei
khuaih	-	duilow khou sinswmei (nkhuaih)
khuaih	-	khuaihmei, laathaumei
gah	-	gahling
gah	-	guh gah
gah	-	gunh gah
gai	-	thingbang gai e
gai	-	kakai gai kamang e
gay	-	gay hak ge
gay	-	kakhac gay e
gan	-	gan (nap gan)
gan	-	thingchy khou nrui gan bam e.
ganv	-	kaganv, ganv gayna kai tangc o de.
ganv	-	luay ganv
ganc	-	ganc o, ganc key o.
ganc	-	nggaanv ganc e.
ganh	-	ganh khang nzav e.
ganh	-	tingthinc ganh key e.
ngganv	-	ngguakcmei, nruymei
ngganv	-	mik ngganvmei
pu	-	pu (pui,pu)
pu	-	luaih, riang
pw	-	dui luangc rahmei
pw	-	mpeih pw
puc	-	puc bwan
puc	-	suh khou nau khou tumei
phei	-	napthw gi
phei	-	baanh rui phei e
bang	-	nngeic puat bang e.
bang	-	tingthai bang e.

bangv	-	gin bangv e.
bangv	-	thingchy bangv e.
bangc	-	guaih bangc e.
bangc	-	guangh kai bangc sw kan the.
bangh	-	bangh swmei
bangh	-	riang rui banghmei
mai	-	mai chuangc e.
mai	-	kamang mai
mai	-	kailuangc mai (kachwm, kamai)
maih	-	amuh, ravzauhmei
maih	-	gay maih e.
mih	-	paan sow khou sinmei mih
mih	-	tunac mih khang kating dui
raa	-	nruay raa
raa	-	kai raa key e
rav	-	ravsic
rav	-	lainac, ravpuat
rav	-	phaamh, thav
rac	-	pary rac
rac	-	nchiat rac
rac	-	dui luangc rac, chaeng tat rac
rah	-	kamang rah e
rah	-	rah (ra)
ri	-	tat ri, thay ri, saa ri
ri	-	khav ri, tingthai ri, mwn ri
ry	-	syan rymei
ry	-	suc ry, guaih ry
rih	-	suc rih
rih	-	riang rihmi
lai	-	nap lai, gan lai
lai	-	phey lai e.
lai	-	khuaih bou lai e.
lai	-	kailuangc lai e, rih lai e
lay	-	a thei lay o
lay	-	guaih lay e, suc lay e.

lay	-	ntumei ta
laic	-	pheybaan laic e.
laic	-	ntanhzwan laic e.
laic	-	dui laiclou e.
hi	-	Meic hi khou sow e.
hi	-	Bi hi e.
hui	-	mpinh hui e.
hui	-	meiczaeng hui e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Kabah nchamcmei hy o.

lauchaeng ..... naaraa

.....

khiwkhingh ..... si

.....

tampy ..... kaidaeng

.....

2. Latkaeng nchoumei hy o.

alauc ..... ting

.....

nkhuaimei ..... kai

.....

kakhum ..... phaaloumei

.....

3. Tiiloumei nchamcmei latkaeng hei kabah kanei kathumh nai ngam e, kabah kanei kanei hy o.

kang	.....	.....
khav	.....	.....
mai	.....	.....
ri	.....	.....
rac	.....	.....

14.0 LATMI

Grammar khou **Kabah** hei tabui ta cho twmei hei class seven khou ncham kan the. Kumna mi khouhei kabah lev kariang naina **Latmi** hei kathai kho.

Latmi tabui ta cho ?

Ruanglat khou latkaeng thei layguangmei latkaeng nai e. Mi latkaeng hei karaana kabah tipat ngammei nai e, kabah tipat ngam makmei nic nai e. Tihkic latkaeng khat tangv saahaaplou pwkhou latkaeng kabah tei ti-nthuihlou e, kami titangclou e. Mi kumcna haapguangmei latkaeng tihei **latmi** kaw e. Latmi kazauhna lat saa pwkhou nking bampui mei lungning mik khoutei saa bammei lwnlung tei tihowlou e. Mitei kumcna Latmi kazauhna lat hylou pwkhou pac bampui mei lungning mik khoutei hylou bammei lwnlung tei tihowlou e. Kumna Latmi rui lat tatei kabah tiguangtangc chuylou e. Mitei aniw zauc kho.

Latkamv :-

Kamik kakhip be.	Kamik kakhip **riphrip** e.
Kamwang ahah e.	Kamwang ahah **lahla** e.
Kahi lik ge.	Kahi lik **sikhsik** ge.
Rah e.	Rah **riauhriau** e.
Kabung nke e.	Kabung nke **ginhgin** e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian guay khou hei *riphrip, lahla, sikhsik, riauhriau, ginhgin* twmei guay hei Latmi raana the. Mi latmi hei haaplouna saa pwkhou lat tei mik khou tihowna kabah ti-nthuihlou e, kami titangclou e twmei aniw how e.

Latmi hei latkaeng nchamc sihnic saa bammei kadwn swmei latkaeng theilayna kabah nic baic baic e.

Latkamv:-

khehkhe	Kadai *khehkhe* mec. Kathiulaa *khehkhe* e.
rimhrim	Nuic *rimhrim* e. Dui chungc rimhrim e.
runhrun	Kamik tanguih *runhrun* e. Syan-khuangh hiw *runhrun* e.
suthsut	Karym namh *suthsut* re. Sin *suthsut* re.

taphtap Tat ri *taphtap* be.
Dui zow *taphtap* be.

Karuc khou hyloumei guay hei zauc pwkhou Ruanglat saamei, hymei, pahmei khou latmi hei rui lat ta kabah ti-nthuihlou e twmei how e. Kumna latmi hei Ruanglat khou kabiswmei khat re twna laa e.

Latmi hei kazaat kanei nai e - (1) ***Adverb of Adverb*** **Latmi** khatnic (2) ***Adverb of Adjective*** **Latmi** mi nei hei e.

14.1.0 *Adverb of Adverb* Latmi

Kamei ata tat ri *taphtap* be.
Kadwnbi taanv taanc chuy *khithkhit* re.
Howgayliu Lu suan kasic *tanhtan* e.

Karuc khou **Latmi** *taphtap, khithkhit, tanhtan* hei tabui Latmi cho twmei zauc kho.

Verb	***Adverb***	***Adverb of Adverb***
Tat	ri	taphtap be.
Taanc	chuy	khithkhit re.
Suan	kasic	tanhtan e.

Karuc khou **Latmi** *taphtap, khithkhit, tanhtan* hei ***Adverb of Adverb*** **Latmi** e twmei thay e.

14.2.0 *Adverb of Adjective* Latmi

Mphwan phumhphummei phey tei mbaanv bam e.
Nchu rihrimei dui tei zangv e.
Ndeih dihdimei khuaicdui mbap be.
Nggit dithditmei mwnrym namh e.
Howgay khithkhitmei tunacpui tei guang e.
Haengc ringhringmei mwn tei kahaw e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khou naimei Latmi hei tabui Latmi cho twmei zauc kho.

Adjective	***Adverb of Adjective***	***Noun***	***Verb***
Mphwan	phumhphummei	phey tei	mbaanv bam e.
Nchu	rihrimei	dui tei	zangv e.
Ndeih	dihdimei	khuaicdui	mbap be.
Nggit	dithditmei	mwnrym	namh e.
Howgay	khithkhitmei	Tunacpui tei	guang e.
Haengc	ringhringmei	mwn tei	kahaw e.

Karuc khou tiiloumei latrian khou naimei Latmi hei ***Adverb of Adjective Latmi*** e twmei how e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Ruanglat khou latmi tabui ta cho ? Duina daw o khatnic latkamv kanei kathumh hy o.
2. Ruanglat khou latmi kazaat kanei nai e. Tbuibui tei cho.
3. Nang raana latmi louna hysuak go.

   (a) Tinggaanc _____ the.

   (b) Tingmow _____e.

   (c) Neih suc tina nap minc _____the.

   (d) Chingh zuang _____ e.

   (e) Mai mit _____e.
4. Nchumhmei dinc o.

   Kamei tat ranv khithkhit re. *adverb of adverb e/adverb of adjective e.*
   Mwnpwang tei nrym raihrai e. *adverb of adverb e/adverv of adjective e.*

   Huay kauc chinhchin e.*adverb of adjective e/adverb of adverb e.*
   Lubuannei howgay taphtap e. *adverb of adjective e/adverb of adverb e.*

15.0 LATPAA
(Pair of Word)

Ruanglat Grammar khou **Latmi** hei tabui cho twmei hei Kabah lev kariang naina ncham kan the. Kumna mi khouhei kabah lev kariang naina **Latpaa** hei nic kathai kho.

Latpaa tabui cho?

Ruanglat khou latkaeng hei kapaa kapaa naina saamei latkaeng geicna nai e. Mi latkaeng paa tihei **Latpaa** kaw e. Latpaa rui latkaeng kabah tipatlou e. Latpaa sinsw thayna saa ethei lat hei kabah gaymei, kagunc naimei, nuhgaymei latsav sw e.

Latpaa hei kakang kathumh patna zauc nuh e -

(1) Kazi Latpaa (Pair of Words),

(2) Nchoumei Latpaa (Antonyms), khatnic

(3) Kaluaihmei Latpaa (Reduplications).

15.1.0 KAZI LATPAA (Pair of Word)

Latpaa hei kapaa kaneimei kabah pat ngammei nai e, kapaa khat kabah pat ngam makmei nic nai e. Kazi Latpaa hei kazaat padeih nai e - **(a) Noun Latpaa, (b) Verb Latpaa, (c) Adverb Latpaa khatnic (d) Adjective Latpaa** - miguay hei e. Kabangc khou mi latpaa lwn asaekc nchinlou e.

15.1.1 Noun zamh Kazi Latpaa

ntey tamuc

Lungcsi sihnic ***ntey tamuc*** thu gaat nuh mak ge.

ntey - ***Ntey*** lou makmei gan thu chaamphut dyng the cho!
Latkamv - Gan khou ntey chaa khang lou o.

tamuc - ***Tamuc*** hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkam - Tamuc hei khiangc gaanc e.

nkhui tamaa

Nkhui tamaa na sihnic maekna tam kani nuh mak ge.

nkhui - ***Nkhui*** hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkav - gankhiang nkhui, tasiaw nkhui mi kumhmei ta e.

tamaa - ***Tamaa*** hei latpaa e, kabah naithuai mak ge.

Latkamv:- pary parav, nruay tiangtu, kaikwn kairun, naasamc naaraa, mikumhmei guay hei **Noun** zamh **Kazi Latpaa** raana e.

15.1.2 Verb zamh Kazi Latpaa

Kathouh karangh

Latsaa khou lunghpuamh khang ***kathouh karangh*** riu.

kathouh - ***Kathouh*** hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkamv - Mpuakckai thingpei rui *kathouh* e.

karangh - ***Karangh*** hei nic kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkamv - Nukuanc karangh e.

nkhav nggav

- Khat khat ta *nkhav nggav* e.

nkhav - *Nkhav* hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.

nggav - ***nggav*** hei latpaa e, kabah naithuai mak ge.

nsauc nrauc

nsauc - *nsauc* hei kabah naithuai mak ge, latpaa e.

nrauc - *Nrauc* hei kwn makna, pian makna saamei, meic baihmei khou ractatmei ta e.

Latkamv:- nkhuay ngguay, duilow thaamhthah, ntaanv nggaanv, laatu laazangv - mi kumhmei guay hei **verb** zamh **Kazi Latpaa** raana e.

15.1.3 Adverb zamh Kazi Latpaa

katuanh kating

- Lanvzaipou ***katuanh katingna*** tat re.

katuanh - 'Katuanh' hei kabah naimei latkaeng e, katumcmei ta e.

- Katuanh langvna lat saa ntangh mak khe.

kating - Kating hei karaana zamh kabah maek ge, latpaa e.

katham kathuina

- Kamik how la makna ***katham kathuina*** tat re.

katham - 'Katham' hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkamv - Kabaanc rui laeng ta katham e.

kathui - 'Kathui' hei kabah maek ge, latpaa e.

Latkamv:-

kakam kamaana, padup padicna, tarut taraana, mikumhmei guay hei Adverb zamh kazi Lapaa e.

15.1.4 Adjective zamh Kazi Latpaa

nzouh nsouh

- Mazahgac ***nzouh nsouh*** e twmei meicguayna thay e.

nzouh - **Nzouh** hei kabah naimei latkaeng.
Latkamv - Kamei mbaamei na hamh e, nzouh e.

nsouh - **Nsouh** hei karaana zamh kabah naithuai mak ge, latpaa e.

palik palei

- Kataangam ***Palik palei*** e.

palik - **Palik** hei kabah naimei latkaeng e.
Latkamv - Nah le, palik langv the, kap zaic pwni the.

palei - **Palei** hei karaana kabah naithuai mak ge, latpaa e.

Latkamv :- saasi saarouhmei, katuan katuimei, kahap kahaamei, param paraamei, panvti nggit - mi kumhmei guay hei Adjective Latpaa e.

Karuc khouhei aniw how e, mikiu thu Ruanglat khou Lat-haap Latpaa nai e khatnic mihei Noun, Verb, Adjective khatnic Adverb zamh Lat-haap Latpaa nai e twmei hei e.

15.2.0 NCHOUMEI LATPAA (Antonyms)

Ruanglat khou nchoumei latkaeng kanei kanei kariuna nchoumei latkaeng kasiamh e. Mi latkaeng zaat tatei **Nchoumei Latpaa** twna thay e. Mi kumhmei nchoumei latpaa asaekc kabangc khou hylou e.

Dui-mai

Dui zamh nchoumei latkaeng hei *mai* e, **dui-mai** twna kariuna saa e.

Kai-lau

Kai zamh nchoumei latkaeng hei *lau* e, **kai-lau** twna kariuna saa e.

Pui-pu

Pui zamh nchoumei latkaeng hei *pu* e, **pui-pu** twna kariuna saa e.i

Mi kumhmei kariumei latkaeng zaat tihei **Nchoumei Latpaa** twna thay e. Nchoumei Latpaa hei kabangc khou hyloumei kumcna kazaat padeih patna zauc nuh e. Mikiu thu - **(a) Noun zamh Nchoumei Latpaa, (b) Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa, (c) Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa khatnic (d) Adjective zamh Nchoumei Latpaa** - miguay hei e.

15.2.1 Noun zamh Nchoumei Latpaa

ntey-taisuh Gan khou tei ***ntey-taisuh*** lou chuy o.

Ntey hei noun e, *taisuh* nic noun e. Ntey lev taisuh hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei hei kariuna Noun zamh Nchoumei Latppa sw e.

si-guak Kaguinai kai ***si-guak*** nruaih chuy e.

Si hei noun e, *guak* nic noun e. Si lev guak hei nchoumei

latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei hei kariuna Noun zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

thing-tauh Kai sw khang ***thing-tauh*** laalou ngam the.
Thing hei noun e, *tauh* nic noun e. Thing lev tauh hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaeng kanei hei kariuna Noun zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

15.2.2 Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa

lusuan-latsaa Chadi riu, nang pu *lusuan latsaa* bam e.
Lusuan hei verb e, *latsaa* nic verb e. Lusuan lev latsaa hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

tu-zangv Laukhwan khuangh chakiu khou aniw tu-zangv e.
hei verb e, *zangv* nic verb e. Tu lev zangv hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

taanc-ruaic Aniw baihmei nic taanc, lau nic taanc-ruaic e.
Taanc hei verb e, *ruaic* nic verb e.Taanc lev ruaic hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Verb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

15.2.3 Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa

tatpat-tatgutna Apou tei karacpouc the tihkic ***tatpat-tatgutna*** kalung bam e.
Tatpat hei Adverb e, *tatgut* nic Adverb e. Tatpat lev tatgut hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

zauckey-zauckuna
Kamanv nchamc mak ge, puat tatei ***zauckey-zauckuna*** zauc bam e. *Zauckey* hei Adverb e, *zaucku* nic Adverb e.

Zauckey lev zaucku hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

tattanc-tatnau Mi khangsuangc hian dat ngam mak khe, ***tattanc-tatnau*** tat bammei hei di the. *Tattanc* hei Adverb e, *tatnau* nic Adverb e. Tattanc lev tatnau hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

15.2.4 Adjective zamh Nchoumei Latpaa

siimei-gaymei Gaygacpou zamh ***siimei-gaymei*** meic guayna thay e. *Simei* hei Adjective e, *gaymei* nic Adjective e.Siimei lev gaymei hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adjective zamh zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

khianghmei-ndeihmei

Nlaunadui thu ***khianghmei-ndeihmei*** kazauh ngam the. *Khianghmei* hei Adjective e, *ndeihmei* nic Adjective e.
Khianghmei lev ndeihmei hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adjective zamh zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

nchumei-chaenghmei

Aseic tingmik hei ***nchumei-chaenghmei*** kagat chaa raphrap e.
Nchumei hei Adjective e, *chaenghmei* nic Adjective e. Nchumei.lev chaenghmei hei nchoumei latkaeng kanei e. Mi latkaengh kanei hei kariuna Adjective zamh Nchoumei Latpaa sw e.

Karuc khou kathaimei khouhei how e, mikiu thu Ruanglat khou Nchoumei Latpaa nai e khatnic mihei Noun, Verb, Adjective khatnic Adverb zamh Nchoumei Latpaa nai e twmei hei e.

15.3.0 KALUAIHMEI LATPAA (Reduplicattions)

Ruanglat khou saa kaluaih datdatmei latkaeng, latpaa zaat nai e. Mi tatei **Kaluaihmei Latpaa** (Reduplication) twna thay e.

linghlingh laenghlaengh - Kai guangtanghpui lev ***linghlingh laenghlaengh*** tat dat kan de.

kasatsat kamatmat - Kapumc nsuan de tihkic ***kasatsat kamatmat*** tat kan de.

katuitui kaliangliang - Akai si Kamangpu tei swsi langvna ***katuitui kaliangliang***, saa dat ngam mak khe.

kapkap nuicnuic - Kapu theic kanmei tangv khou award tei tiiguang tina kakai guay ***kapkap nuicnuic*** bam e.

siisii gaygay - Aseicdou guangmei Father Matthew hei ***siisii gaygay*** e.

towtow zizi - Kamei thu bauruam langvna ***towtow zizi*** de.

lulu latlat - Taraengv kadaicmei kai ***lulu latlat*** bam the.

Latkamv:-

thuncthun duaicduai
khiangckhiangc ndeihdeih
thacthac bumcbumc
kangakngak kangohngoh
patpat gutgut
keykey kuku
latlat lulu
buybuy baengbaeng
napnap zouhzouh
tutu zangvzangv
phayphay baanhbaanh

padupdup padicdic

syansyan khuanghkhuangh

Mihei kumcna Kaluaihmei Latpaa hei geicna sinsw e, saa e.

KATHAIDWAN

1. Latpaa tabui ta cho? Ruanglat khou Latpaa kazaat azuh nai cho ? Tabuibui tei cho?

2. Kazi Latpaa tabui ta cho? Kazaat azuh nai cho? Tabuibui tei cho?

3. Nchoumei Latpaa kazaat azuh nai cho? Tabuibui tei cho? Latkamv khat khat tiina hy o.

4. Ruanglat khou Kaluaihmei Latpaa nai e. Latkamv kathumh hy o.

16.0 NYNGTYNG LATCHAP

(Proverbs and Sayings

Nyngtyng latchap tabui ta cho ?

Saa ngachapna saa e twna Latchap kaw e twna aniw rui chalahna daw nuh e. Tihkic Puipu pouhpeih lungc reymei nunc rui lungc ariu kanmei, how kanmei, thay kanmei, saa kanmei, taanc kanmei khourui nyngtyng laatowna mitei amuc makna latchap latriak swna swna saa kanaamv sw, thay kanaamv swguangmei, kabah tii ngammei, lungning mik tirakpat ngammei lat zaat nai e. Mi kumhmei nyngtyng lat zaat tihei **Nyngtyng Latchap** kaw e. Nyngtyng Latchap rui duina saa lana kabah tithay nthuihlou e.

Aniw rui pouhpei chap, rav chap, maansei chap, kailuangc chap twna saa e. 'Chap' twna saamei guay hei kalungc khou kabah duiriang naimei, tingsaengcna tatnahguangmei, thay nchamc, saa nchamc guangmei riak guay ta thay e. Kumna Lat khat lungc khou kabah nthukmei, gaymei, siimei nkunna naimei, kabah tii ngammei khatnic tingsaengcna tatnah guangmei lat zaat tihei **'lat chap'** hamhethei **'latchap'** twna thay e.

Latchap tihei Englishlat khou **proverb** khatnic Ntaylat khou **paurou** twna kaw e.

Lat kathuih khou naimei kumcna Ruanglat khou nic Nyngtyng Latchap hei geicna nai e. Latbamv khat, latlam khat, latlwan khat khou nyngtyng latchap kazauhna saa pwkhou lat kabac tei guangtangc chuy e, laatow gay e. Nyngtyng Latchap hei kabah lev kariang nai e, kabah khou piu e.

Ruanglat khou saa bammei Nyngtyng Latchap asaekc zauc kho.

1. Aguc duidai kaniam gay e.

   ntakmei, lungning daihmei kaniam nai e.

   Kazaigay kalungning nkauh, ntak twlamei thu kalatsav kaniam gay e, ***Aguc duidai kaniam gay e*** twmei kiu di the.

2. Agaekc kaduy thuanc e.

   Karaana kata thuanhmei

   Nang raana nang ta saathuanc raphrap be, ***agaekc kaduy thuanc e*** twmei kiu di the.

3. Alangh khav geic meic nchow mak ge.

   taanc ngam saa ngammei maekmei

   Arammei thu maansei kasing ramgei na de, saa ngam suan ngammei meic khat sihnic maek ge. ***Alangh khav geic meic nchow mak ge*** twmei kiu di the.

4. Aphyna kakuanc khou nangc e.

   kai khou kabau nai, mpaeng patna lat saa thay makmei

   Mpaeng patna meicgeihmei hu khou lat saapat thay mak lana kai khou guangna kabauh bam e, ***aphyna kakkuanc khou nangc e*** twmei kiu di the.

5. Alaih nac kamang chaapat mak ge.

   zei, zaatc kalaih mak ge

   Kaihouhmei kiktaat khou kaihouhmei chaapat dat muay tuang de. ***Alaih nac kamang chaapat mak ge*** twmei kiu de.

6. Baley karou maek ge.

   lat saa kalaic kalwmei, lat kadyng maekmei

   Nang lat tei nang lat tanhtan o, khat khou saa baic khat khou saa baic tw rio, ***baley karou maek ge*** twna pangsaa saa riu.

7. Beih patpui ramc beih kungc e.

   kamanv katy khou lwmgaymei lev nchamc makmei, kadat dikhdikmei

   Ntay khou guaih geic the kamanv huangh maih pwng the twna key tikic kungc chuy de cho! ***Beih patpui ramc beih kungc e*** twmei kiu di the.

8. Binwang khou dui laihlou kumc.

   lat gut makmei,

   Kapu rui kakhou lat peyna ncham ncheilou e tihkic kanukuanc dip khou sihnic gut mak ge, ***binwang khou dui laihlou kumc*** twmei kiu de.

9. Chaeng raan baa thing riu.

riangruaih swtaekmei, gaymei lwan swkasicloumei

Nang pouc Kabipou kai lev akai ntaw na rui hamh the, reynungc na rui khat khat ta ningkungc guangmei kai e. Nang rui kakai tunac nunc ta swzin swzaalou tithei nzianmei riang taek kan pwni. ***Chaeng raan baa thing riu.***

10. Chakhaengv guang-gai kumc.

simei chwn amaan makna nai tanhtan bammei

Kaganv khat khou now lam khou karatlou khourui kakai kaikhunh kanei tei tamian thuy makna kaganv tangc ethei latgeic dat raphrapna ***chakhaengv guang-gai kumc*** sucpat dat raphrap bam di the.

11. Dik siimei maiswm sihnic katum kariulou ethei chuangc e.

Mpang luammei nunc sihnic chwn nchamcna kaphianh kariu ethei lunghthau e, pumtan guang e, taancpat biu e.

Mpang luam bam sihnic nang pu nang chaic nunc ta kaw kaduai lana dymdwanmei gay pwng e, ***diksiimei maiswm sihnic katum kariulou ethei chuangc e*** twmei lat nai e.

12. Duichaengv chalwan zeih mbaih, zeih duichaengv mabaih e.

Maansei ramlung lungcgaymei lungcgay tanhtan mak ge, lungsiimei nic lungcsii tanhtanh makge, lunggay guay lungcsii guai e.

Kapu kapouc kin khou thu lungcgay chingkhiuhmei kai the, tihkic ntaw thu kakai lungcsii ryanraamei kanganv tangc the. ***Duichaengv chalwan zeih mbaih, zeih duichanengv mbaih e*** twmei kiu dithe.

13. Dui key niimei lev pumh bau niimei nchamc e.

khat nic khat nic suai nchamc de, gaanv khatna ta nkham khang maek ge.

Mi tunacpui tei katwn chaa mak ge, kadaeng khoutei tatlou rio twna saa dat saa dat the. Ntaw thu siimei pat the lav! Tunacpui nic nggaanvpu nic nchamc de, ***duikey niimei lev pumh bau niimei nchamc e.***

14. Gaa mik nym sii kumc.

kalam khat khou saaswmlou khat biak suaipat dat, katwn khat nuh ethei katwn khat nuhmak, khat nymkey khat khuangthau twmei.

Nang kata laek ntwn ngam pwlak ge, kamei thu ***gaa mik nym sii kumh*** tuang de.

15. Gay tuang kadaa sii tuang guangriu e.

kadaa langv ethei siimei kadaa ariu e.

Gayrilungc tunac kadaa kadaa nganv khou katwn pat makmei ta kanow khang kaw the. ***Gay tuang kadaa sii tuang guangriu*** twmei kiu di the.

16. Guaichangc thouh nai mak kumc.

kataanv karuai maekna nsaa kaganv swmaan bammei

Latrik nic ncham mak, lau taanv nic taanh mak ***guaichangc thouh nai mak kumc*** lungc bam e, neih khat thu pui how pwng the.

17. Gin guaic kachei saengc e.

mpaeng thu mei ta ning nkauhmei, meic baihmei ta howpuanhmei

Gin khangc rui tanc hian bauc hian kumc ning bam tina de, ***gin guaic kachei saengc e*** twmei kiu de. Kaniw rui tanc hian bau hian bam tuang hamh e, aniw lev kiuckhat muay de,

18. Gaa ngginmei nggung e.

mpaeng-laam tat langv ethei lungning laeng e, kaikhunh phou e, meic lwmmak ge.

Tabui khang cho, mpaeng-laam tat langv e, ***gaa ngginmei nggung e*** twmei lat nai e.

19. Guaipuang thei tho si sangv e.

hu khou saa bauh makna nthei tho bauhmei.

Kakaipouc hu khou tho saa bauh mak lana ntaw tat thei kan khou kahuk bammei thu ***guaipuang thei tho si sangv e*** twmei kiu dithe.

20. Guaipuang rui alay ethei kabak khou zuanglou o.

nkhuailou ethei pakley dat ri tho.

Nkhuai nlaanhlou tuang nai ethei pingna duptat ri tho, kalum kagaana sihnic huaykuak go. ***Guaipuang rui alay ethei kabak khou zuanglou o*** twmei nai e.

21. Guaituam karouc swpui chaeng theic nzut re.

kalang khourui zung nzutmei, zippui khe sw khourui zip nzutmei

Mi nac tei kalangna zippui khe sw bam khourui zipri changh kan the, ***guaituam karouc swpui chaeng theic nzut re*** twmei kiu dithe.

22. Guaiphuap kapev maekmei kalungthu daic e.

ramh sw ngam lak nimei rui kadiu daihmei

Nsuanmei ramh sw ngam lak nimei kamei rui daic tuhtu bam, ***guaiphuam kapev maekmei kalungthu daic e*** twmei kiu dithe.

23. Kamang nac zaythau kumc

kaluay karei siimei kai tuang ramh laathaumei, sinhsinmei

Gaynaipou kai luc ta kawthaumei thu ***kamang nac zaythau kumc*** twmei kiu riath de, kapuningc nunc nzwan guang nuangc pwni tuang de, khatnic siimei taanv taanclou nuangc pwni de.

24. Kamang nac kamang chaa, alaih nac alaih chaa e.

chaa maan mak ge, puipu lwn tei luicna chaapat re.

Bauhmei zei khou bauhmei, nsuanmei zei khou nsuanmei chaa pat re. ***Kamang nac kamang chaa, alaih nac alaih chaa*** twmei kiu de.

25. Kanac ta ncham tiki kaigaanvmei nac thay rey e.

mpangmei nac ta nchammei tei ntakmei nac rui laalou e.

Mpangmei kanac ta nchamloumei tei ntakmei kaigaanvmei nac rui chuna piu rey kan e.***Kanac ta ncham tiki kaigaanvmei nac thay rey e*** twmei kiu dithe.

26. Khou mun pingna nthaanh mun paklou e.

siimei ta ley guang pwkhou siimei akhat ta ariumei

Sucrih ta pingna pak guang tuang e tihkic latgeihpui twn paklou the. ***Khoumun pingna pak gethei nthaanh mun paklou e*** twmei kiu dithe.

27. Khuaihnac kang houctumei ta sinnamv e.

taanc gay e, tugay e twna nkamhna taanc han dat dat bam khourui sinnamvmei

Nang mi pui daeng khoutei gut dat tyamtyam bammei tei zaeng neih khat thu kasii karou pat pwng the, ***khuaihnac kang houctumei ta sinnamv e*** twmei kiu suai makna pat pwng the.

28. Khuaidaic khuaingaek nac rian kangwm chuy tuang kumc.

chwn nchamc chuymei, nggamc raphrapmei

Mi ramcmei tei thu chwn nchamc chuy e. Taanc kho ruaic khou nchamc chuy e, ***khuaidaic khuaingaek nac rian kangwm chuy tuang kumc*** twmei kiu didyng e.

29. Laamhmei ta ncham gay e.

khan khang chalah e, taanh khang kungc e.

Taanv khat taanhmei ta zaucna kum sw o, kum tio twna saa bam khang chalah e, ***laamhmei ta ncham gay e*** twmei kiu de. Tihkic taanc changh ethei kungc sih e.

30. Luiduk bangc khou nrui nai e.

tumei zangvmei khou kasii karou pat nuhmei nai geic e.

Nang ta nzianpui khe swna tu kho, zangv kho twbammei twn tei sii-roucmei pat nuh e, amaanmei khou keylou nuh e, chariakh thay o.***Luiduk bangc khou nrui nai e*** twmei lat nai e.

31. Latsav tu nimei nac laengsang kalanv e.

taanc suai saa suai tanc e

Nang pu rui nang ta luh nii bam khoutei nang hei taanv taanc suailou dat sanv the, ***latsav tu nimei nac laengsang kalanv e*** twmei kiu dithe.

32. Lwmsiimei guhtam sow e.

lwmsii bam khou swchuyloumei

Mi kai hei heiczu tii bam pw lak ge twna ning tuang e tihkic tiipat geic lianglou dat rapna ***lwmsimei guh tam sow e*** twmei kiu didyng the.

(guh tam = zankangc lev guh diangcloumei tam)

33. Lausic ruaic la ganc thuy mak, nowsic kaw la mu thuy mak.

taanclou riina, swlou riina mpat dat khang kunghmei

Mi taanv hei gay hakmei taanv hamh the, sinthaulou riina ganckey dat khang nuhmakna taanc bam tu dithe. ***Lausic ruaic la ganc thuy mak, nowsic kaw la mu thuy mak*** twmei kiu dithe.

34. Laugai mu katiakc gethei mpaa e tihkic lat thu katiakc gethei phan e.

lat hei katamv langv ethei latgeic e.

Lat tei saa luailou tang the, saa katamv dat ri tho. Lat hei katamv katiakc langv ethei phan-raa dat pwng e. ***Laugai mu katiakc gethei mpaa e tihkic lat thu katiakc gethei phan e,*** twmei lat nai e.

35. Laibu khou dui zowlou tuang kumc.

rau langv e, biu mak ge, kim ni tuang hamh e.

Meic phaykhat tu-zangv khang daengka 2000 na thu rau langv e, ***laibu khou dui zoulou tuang kumc*** kan tuang de.

36. Miktiatmei hu khou laamh lyanmei.

ramh thay makmei hu khou thaypui khe swmei

Kamei nic ramh thay thuai tuang hamh e, ramhthay makmei nunc hu khou thaypui lwn sw bam tuang de. ***Miktiatmei hu khou laamh lyanmei*** kiu de.

37. Machunhmei nac machuay e.

machunh langv, lunghgeic kadan langv khourui kapaek pat makmei

Kapui kapu rui lunghgeic kadan langvna taanc ruak saa ruaklou ngam rap tina kanac nunc kapaek pat makmei geic the. ***Machunhmei nac machuay e*** twmei kiu dithe.

38. Maiswm mut ni khou khou katyn e.

luai ni khou sii katyn e.

Term luai kan ni the, meicsiimei CM tei sii ranv bam the. ***Maiswm mut ni khou khou katyn e*** twmei kiu la khwang the.

39. Mbaymei ta malaa makna kauhmei ta malaa e.

meic baihmei zak kalauhpui mei ta meic rui malaa e.

Tunac-nggaanv kungc nguihna pary parav rahmei thu kachav de. Mi ta tei kailuangc kauc ndauh bam khang kage maek ge, kauc bammei mei tei katwn chaa mak ge, kata meic ningkey e. ***Mbaymei ta malaa makna kauhmei ta malaa e*** twpui lat nai e.

40. Mbaamei nthak thay e.

mbaamei nic ntu-nggaan chwn nai e

Mbaamei e twna nthah nthak khwan lak ge twna ning riu, ***mbaamei nthak thay e*** twmei lat nai e.

41. Neih khat ngginloumei rui thay e.

khey, lwnlung hei howpat nuangc, thay nuangc de.

Maansei khey, lwnlung, thaek hei nkamh bam ngam mak ge, ***neih khat ngginloumei rui thay e*** twmei lat nai e.

42. Now nic kaw, beih nic nlei.

swchuypui mei khang thu kadow chaa muay muay e.

Gaylaapou thu MA Gold Medalist swna taanv nic mphang, daengka akhaa zamh research project nic mphang, kanow gaymei nic mphang, gay hak dyng e. ***Now nic kaw beih nic nlei*** twmei kiu didyng the.

43. Nggat khou ntey ntuplou kumc.

nrouhna reihrei keymei, pingna kadouh keymei.

Kabithuih class khou swpui khe, thaypui khe sw bammei su Principal gut tiki ***nggat khou ntey ntuplou kumc*** tat kan the.

44. Ruayduic kwmtwan nchow mak ge.

tunaa-pangnaa latbamv khou kapy kagav nunc kazauh bam khang hamh e.

Mi latbamv hei tunaa-pangnaa latbamv de, nang nggaanvmei saa kazauh bam khang hamh e. ***Ruayduic kwmtwan nchow mak ge*** twmei lat tei thay makna cho?

45. Si nwan na sihnic meic teic sac e.

nwan hei nthyam nic daic nic sii e.

Ramh thay makmei mpang mbaamei de twna ningkeyna swzin swzaa riu, nuanclou pwng e. ***Sii nwan na sihnic meic tei sac e*** twmei lat nai e.

45. Suc thu kaphaypav zam khourui theic e tihkic maansei thu kamwang khourui theic e.

suc ta kaphaypav suic e, maansei ta kalat suic e.

Lat hei chariakhna saa o, saa manclou ngamna ramhsic patbam lamc e. ***Suc thu kaphaypav zam khourui theic e tihkic maansei thu kamwang khourui theic e*** twmei lat nai e.

47. Suc pat mak khou swphaa phac o.

simei pat mak khou ncham nchei rey o.

Nang nac tunac e, meic saamei khwan chu e. Simei pat mak khou ncham o, pat tang ethei saa bamna gaeng mak ge, nsaa dithe. ***Suc pat mak khou suphaa phac o*** twmei lat nai e.

48. Tu nii katuanh khourui baley chuap e.

Kanow khang thanvluailoumei tunac ta zaypak tat rap tina kapuningc nunc rui nsut dat kan the, kaw tow pwlak khe. ***Tu nii katuanh khourui baley chuap be*** twmei kiu dithe.

49. Tanthihmei lanv nthumc tu e.

tiipat khang nzavna nkamhloumei puat, lanv ry nthuk langv khourui gaeng makna amaanmei, karaana kasicmei, houc kanmei.

Panti langvna kaikun khou ryloumei taruc thw guay apuakc rui nlip kasic ngam the. ***Tanthihmei lan nthumc tu e*** twmei kiu di the.

50. Tu nimei ganbang kabwan khourui thay e.

meic sw nimei sw lak nimei alauc khourui thay e.

Meic sw nimei sw lak nimei alauc khourui kalwn thay de. ***Tu nimei ganbang kabwan khourui thay e*** twmei tei de.

17.0 LATTHIAP

(Idioms)

Lathiap tabui ta cho?

Aniw rui lat saa khou latkaeng kaling tei saa makna latkaeng baihmei asaekc kariuna saa ntheih maihna saa e. Mi kumcna saamei ta lat saa kathiapcmei kaw e. Kumna mi lat kaeng zaat ti hei **Latthiap** kaw e, English rui **Idiom** twna thay e. Latthiap hei thaymei nunc na rui kabah thay e, thay makmei nunc thu tabui saa tuang cho twmei kabah thay mak nuh e. Lat heihmei nunc rui latthiap nic saathay e.

1. baanh saenghmei = *houhmei, nkamhna laamei, nkamhna kazapmei* ***Kabaanc saengcna*** meickai puat houctu houczangvmei tei kataanv di the.

2. baandau nluaimei = *meic thiak swmakmei, meic chaengc swmakmei* Taanv taanh khou nang mu meic swmei lwan hamhna ***baandau nluai*** pwni sanv the.

3. buh charaammei = *lunghgeihmei, pingmei* Tabui sw pwni cho lunghgeicna ai mu ***buh charaam*** e.

4. baanzat patmei = *taanv thiak thaymei, lat saamei thiak thaymei* Taanv khang nic lat khang nic kamei mu ***baanzat pat*** dyng e.

5. chani chaphan = *kagat rina taanhmei, saamei, suanmei* Mi taanv zaat hei taanc katup langv thena ***chani chaphan*** the.

6. chaky sow nganv = *ramh sw kasuan dat khang nuh makmei, nganvloumei* Saa la khang kumc, sw la khang kumc tat tuang e tihkic kalam chaa mak rap pwkhou meickai hu khou aniw swthau swguang dat khang thay mak khe, ***chaky sow nganvna*** twmei kiu di the.

7. charuangc zahmei = *meic rak ntin thaymei*
Kaikun dupna bam rio, rupryan pang khou tatna ***charuangc zahmei*** gay e.

8. chakhiu chakhey = *kakhanh mincna, sii langv gay langv*
Mi latbamv tei ai nuhlou mak tuang the tihkic ***chakhiu chakhey*** ning tangcna kum kandiu tho twlou tuang e.

9. chalumc lwmmei = *siina ningruakmei, lwmsii reymei*
Mpaeng laam pat mak, ramhthay raumei charuangc khou ***chalumc lwmmei*** nai tanc e.

10. chathwan lat = *kiu hamhmei lat thuanloumei, sii khang lat duyloumei*
Kalam thay nthan.o, ***chathwan lat*** khou lwmna taancpat khang sw riu.

11. duikey maikeymei = *syangdyng swna dui kalimhmei*
Kai-lau lam agi agaa lana ***duykey maikeymei*** thu gay mak ge.

12. duikaanv gay khou = *lat gay bampui dak khou, kagat chaamei khou*
Lat hei saa kagat ri mak khou ***dui kaanv gay khou*** loukeymei gay e.

13. ganthiangc duilanghmei = *ngasatna puanhmei, nah bammei*
Ntumei ***ganthiangc duilanghmei*** ganv khou tugay zangvgay titu o.

14. guaih bangh = *syan-lanv, nap-bi, guak-guaih*
Makuzai kai lungcgay lamei thu ***guaih bangh*** gaat mak ge.

15. guhsw gahswmei = *khat khang nuh khat khang nuh makmei, nchumh makmei latzan, khat ta nzian khat ta nzian mak twmei.*
Phwam khou, charuangc khou ***guhsw gahswmei*** hei gay mak ge.

16. kaizak dupmei = *meic rak kariu makmei, mpaeng pat makmei*
Khwmngay key sihnic nang thu charuangc kariuna meic rak ntin makna ***kaizak dup*** bam hei thu akumhna cho?

17. kagan kaluic sihnic phui mak khou = *kamung tangv asaanh makna, kaganv chaa makna*
Taraengvpouc tei ***kagan kaluic sihnic phui mak khou*** kapanty tat kan the.

18. kathey maekmei = *zamsiimei, kabau maekmei*
Kamang raa chu lana Kabigay ***kathey makmei*** tei mpaeng pat ding dat bauh mak khe.

19. Katu sw kaluai sw = *khat lev khat ta nkhav karimei, ngangvlou karimei*
Poutou poumaek ***katu sw kaluai swna*** lungc bam khang di the cho.

20. karaipui phey = *taanv ryanraana taanhpui mei, lak guangpui mei*
Lungcsi lungcsangna taancphic ruaicphicna nang pui ai tho ***karaipui phey*** sw guang tuang the.

21. kamryan kamrav = *sinsw rw makmei, haamhaamei*
Lungcsikey rap pwkhou nap-bi ramh guayna ***kamryan kamrav*** tuang raana di the.

22. kambui charaimei = *sinsw rwmei, turw zangrwmei*
Lungc kandiuc twethei ramh guayna nap-zouh, bi-ruh kataana tu ***kambui charai*** rap tuang de.

23. khubut dowmei = *karaana kalat khou, kataanv khou phaysuymei*
Ai rui kasungc swna saaloumei lat tei akai twn suaipat rapna meic raana meic ***khubut dowmei*** kiu akhou pat the ki.

24. khubut khourui kazwmpatmei
= *kadyng khou damc-duancna kasiamhpatmei lat*
Nang lat hei kadyng khouna ***khubut khourui kazwm patmei*** lat luic de, lwmlou khang kungc de.

25. lat-lu geihmei = *katuakcmei, latgeihmei*
Aseicdou Imphal hei ***lat-lu geic*** langvna bam sii the.

26. lu-lat geihmei = *lu, lat, pary geihmei, chingkhiuhchap lungcgaymei*
Ruangmei hei kachap kariak khou ***lu-lat geihmei*** zaat akhat re.

27. lat twan tatmei = *kaling khangsuangc lat saa hian-haamei, lat saa kasuan kamuanmei.*
Ai thay e kamei thu sii hakna saa kan mak ge, ***lat twan tatmei*** nunc mwang khourui saa hian tina khwang de.

28. lat twan towmei = *Kalam nking suak makna karaana kum la khwang the twna ningruakna saamei, saatatmei; kalangv thay nthan thiak makna haamvruakna saamei;*
Saa bammei lat hei tabui cho twmei thay nthan makna ***lat twan tow*** riu.

29. latrwan tatmei = *kiuc hamhmei ta kiuc khang kumcna saatatmei*
E! Suc nic maek rih nic maek, ***latrwan tatmei*** tatsuc langv tina de.

30. meicbian phunghmei = *kataanv siimei, meic nuan meic nii phunghmei, meic rui lungh nuancloupui mei*
Meic bian phunghmei kamei asaanh ringc saengclou nina cho!

31. meicbian tatmei = *kataanv sii tina meic rui swluai swtiatmei, theicsii theihmei, kathei karing kabamv thay makna theihmei*
Nang meic ta sw kasic langv e, nang ta meic nuanc e, ***meic bian tat*** lamc e.

32. meic riang kathangvmei = *meic khaamv nsutmei, meic now kasowmei*
Meic now meic khaamv ta nkhuailou tuang tho ***mei***

riang kathangvmei kiu di the, kamat daicna khap pwni muay the.

33. makhou thaithw lim bakmei = *panvtimei kagat rimei, panvti nggitmei*
Makuniliu pui mu panvti langvna tii sinic katitna tii raphrap be, ***makhou thaithw lim bakmei*** kiu di the.

34. mik-maa nymmei = *gaanv khat ta ramhsw ramhsak makna swmei, tunac ta nymzaymei, kakaipouc hu khou swkasicmei*
Kapu kachaic nai e twmei thayna thayna heickumna ***mik-maa nymmei*** taanv taanc bammei thu khat sihnic akai kwmlou ngam mak ge.

35. mbai baenghmei = *meicgeihmei lwan tat makmei, saa nkicmei, taanc nkicmei*
Kakhanggay tho katwn saa ni tu hamh e, ***mbai baengc*** pwni tuang de.

36. nap lat zouh lat = *nap thiu zouh thiu saamei lat, zouh mbaamei lat*
Zouh geic maih lana kauczin kauczaa bammei tuang de, ***nap lat zouh lat*** de, lunghsuc suanglou riu.

37. nwm tatmei = *nkamh mbeihpui mei, underground tatmei*
Daicguang ***nwm tatmei*** tingkwm riakngu hian the.

38. pypuangh samngauh = *gaanvsuh gaanvdaih panty, panty lungsingmei*
Kataasinpou tingkwm 90 lungc tangcna katou katak zaw how ngam the. ***Py puangh sam ngauh*** lungcpatna panty lungsingna twmei kiu di the.

39. pui-pu baanc rei = *pui-pu rui louduhmei nap-bi, syan-lanv, kai-saamh*
Ai thu araana lungcthau tuang e, nangniw tho ***pui-pu baanc rei*** naina lungcthau tina gay taphtap dyng the cho.

40. pumh thuanmei = *pumh sumhmei, khuay padikmei, theihmei*
(i) Kamaguy lat saa thay mak khourui ***kapumc saa thuan*** e.

(ii) Gayripou meicsimei nunc thei laytat khourui ***kapumc thuan*** kan e.

41. phay saenghmei = *kachaeng geihmei, kai khou nsaa nsum bamkey makmei*
Gaylaapou ***kaphay saenghmei*** maansei e, kata ariu nii ethei laukhwan guang zaic lo.

42. phou guai dangc guai = *zingc guai gaanc guai, si guai gay guai, nuhlou dat nuhlou mak dat*
Maansei thu nai tanhtan mak ge, gaymei nic gay tanhtanh mak ge. ***Phou guai dangc guaimei*** hei maansei riak ge.

43. ravpui nu ndy = *rav chu mak kan diu, rav chu mak khou*
Ravpui nu ndy, meic saa nupui lat re tihkic aseic kamei sansiina theicpui tuang pat rethei kai tho tel phone swna saaguanglouna ro.

44. sugak zougak = *suc nic hamh zouc nic hamhmei, kadathdatmei*
Kamaaguy hei nggaanvmei nic kumc ntumei nic kumc ***su-gak zou-gak*** de.

45. sanbungc laugai ntwanmei = *santanhmei, zakthay makmei, zawtanhmei*
Meic rui kahaw makna saa bam ti sihnic zak khang nic thay mak gut dat tyamtyam, ***kasanbungc laugai ntwanmei*** twmei kiu di the.

46. suc pat mak khou suphaa phahmei = *simei pat mak khou nchamloumei, mphutloumei*
Ntumei nggaanvmei chwn hamcna zaypak kan the, ntaw thu pat ri kan the. Mi hei kahaw mak gethei ***suc pat mak khou suphaa phac*** rey ni tuang e.

47. tingpui maruy = *panty saanv saengh, tingsaeng zaeng*

Nangney ta Ravguangc Mailaek laekloumei hei nangney ***tingpui maruy*** nowpuc swna lungh khang laeklou tuang the.

48. tingthuan dihlai = *kandih lungc kadat kadaengna, charyn charavna*
Nang saa bammei lat tei ***tingthuan dihlai*** nimei lat di the, charyn di the. Ntaw khourui mi lat hei nang mwang paengc saapat dat nuh mak khe.

49. thingkw taulingc = *maan dat lakmei, ding bam pwnimei, nai bam pwnimei*
Maansei thu ***thingkw taulingc*** hamh e, neih khat thu theic kan nimei raana de.

50. thyam duaih = *parian parina hamhethei latlouna sii khang swmei taanv*
Thyn puamhmei ravpuat tihei reynungc thu ***thyam-duaih*** swlou tina kabung nke pat tuang e twna saa bam khwan e.

51. zawkhu zawru = *nchamcna sw makmei, nsuanmei tanhmei, ntakmei mpangmei ta zaucna latzan swmei, ramh tiipat-mei, lat saamei*
= Thaekc naa langvna, mi ramcmei pei rui latzan swmei kiu ***zawkhu zawru*** zaucna sw tuang de, nchumhmei latzan sw mak ge.

52. zaw zauhmei = *ningchakloumei, chakhuang swloumei*
Abung le, nang ta ai peyna mphut nii the tihkic nang pu ***zaw zaucna*** ai kadukkeylou tuang the.

53. zouc baanc = *sin duak tanhmei, baanh katuan kaloumei*
Sin zi sin duak tanc langv e, nang baanc hei ***zouc baanc*** di the.

54. zouc baanc khou napphwn nsinlou kumc = *kakhaanvv kamanv thay makna sinswmei, sinsw luai nuanghmei*
Khanghmeidwn baanc khou syan tiiloumei thu ***zouc baanc khou napphwn nsinlou kumc***, kalangv kalw thay makna nrou nthan thiak kan ni tuang de.

55. zak kai kumei = *katwn chaa mak khourui, taanvsic taanclou khourui latlu bam guangmei, charuangc/peikai guangmei.*
Nang thu meiclat twan-lyamna taansic taanclou rapmei thu aseic thu ***zak kai ku*** khang di the cho.

Part III
24.0
CHARUANGC LATRIAK
(Social Grammar)

24.1.0 Phwm (Head Clans)
24.2.0 Khwang (Clans)
24.3.0 Gai (Totems)
24.4.0 Khugyang (Marriageable Lines)
24.5.0 Chakhuang Lwan (Social Respect)
24.6.0 Numei (Taboo)
24.7.0 Neimei (Genna)
24.8.0 Riangruaih (Kinship Terms)
24.9.0 Kawmei Lwan (Addressing Terms)
24.10.0 Chakhuang Lat
24.11.0 Chapriak Lat (Cultural Terms)

Charuangc latriak kathaimei ta Social Grammar twna thay e. Mi kathaidwan khou hei charuangc khatnic chingkhiuhchap zamh latkaeng, latriak, kawmei lwan asaekc kathai khang duina hylou e.

24.1.0 PHWM (Head Clans)

Ruangmei zaat khou phwmdaih kanei nai e. Mi kiu thu **Singguanghmei Kai** khatnic **Phwmguanghmei Kai** - mi kanei hei e. Mi phwm kanei khou hei kaikhwang guay kazauh ngam the. Mi phwm kanei thei layna chanaa punav, pou-tou pou-maek, chaphwm chaki, khu-gyang, nowkawmei, mihmei lwan hei tat re.

24.2.0 KHWANG (Clans)

Singguanghmei Kai :

Kaamhmei, Malanghmei, Ngaucmei, Pamei (Mpamei), Phaucmei - mi guay hei e.

Phwmguanghmei Kai:

Gaengmei, Gwanmei(Guaymei), Malingmei (Meiringmei), Mariamhmei (Riamhmei) Paanvmei, Rwangmei, Thaanhmei (Thaicmei), - mi guay hei e.

24.3.0 GAI (Totems)

Ruangmei zaat hei khwang khat gai khat khat nai e. Mi gai hei khouringh, nruay, gou-gaa khatnic thingbang mi kumhmei guay hei gai sw e. Gai naithaumei pary khat khat nai e. Gai hei tu nu zangv nu e. Gai guay kabangc khou hylou e.

Daenghmei kai gai	=	Ndau
Gaengmei kai gai	=	Kamang
Gwanmei kai gai	=	Ndau
Kaamhmei kai gai	=	Ruayhuihna
Malanghmei kai gai	=	Ruayhuihna/Raengdaic
Malingmei kai gai	=	Thaengbang
Ngaucmei kai gai	=	
Paamei kai gai	=	Ruayhuihna
Paanvmei kai gai	=	Ruayngauh
Phauhmei kai gai	=	Ruayhuihna
Riamhmei kai gai	=	Gou
Rwangmei kai gai	=	Raengvbungh (Thanngangc)
Thaancmei/Thaimei kai gai	=	Thaengbang

24.3.1 Chanaa Punav

Chanaa punav twmei term hei namv namv khou, kabamv kabamv khou tatnahmei thei lay e. Duina saa pwkhou Phwm khatnamei nunc hei chanaa punav the. Kumna kaniw kailuangc akhatna khou lungc ethei chanaa punav kaw chuyna lunghmei nunc nai e. Tihkic Phwmguanghmei nunc thu kaikhwang baic ethei kagai kagai nic baic e. Kagai baih tuang thu chanaa nic sw e, poutou nic sw e. Kwm tina Phwmguanghmei kai nunc tihei guaituam zanc de twna saanah e.

Tihkic, kalingmei chanaa punav kiu thu kaikhwang nchamcmei, kagai khatnamei, zei khatnamei nunc tei chanaa punav ling kiu the.

24.3.2 Chanaa

Pui-pu khatna rui puanhmei mpouh nunc tei chanaa kaw e. Kaikhwang khatnamei pui-pui nunc rui puancloumei nggaanvmei nunc tei nic chanaa nunc the.

24.3.3 Swanrey

Pui-pu khatna rui puanhmei luh nunc tei swanrey the. Mitei kumcna chanaa nunc nac luh nunc guay tei swanrey the.

24.3.4 Tanpui-Puningc :

Tanpui hei nah luh nunc lev mpouh nunc riang ta e, **puningc** hei nah mpouh nunc lev luh nunc riang ta e. Chanaa punav nac mpouh-luh nunc ta tei, tanpui-puningc kaw e. 'Tanpui-Puningc' twmei hei nzian dianghmei latkaeng e.

24.3.5 Chaphwm Chaki

Chanaa punav hamhmei Kaikhwang baih baihmei, gai baih baihmei nunc, kaw-laa nuhmei riang ta Chaphwm Chaki kaw e.

24.4.0 KHUGYANG (Marriageable Line)

Kaikhwang kanei thunh-mauh laa karina, kawlaa karina, nkhu nggyangna bammei kaikhwang kanei ta tei **khugyang** kaw e. Nowkaw mauh laamei, tianmihmei khou kadai swmei hei 'chaphwam chaki kai' twmei hei e. Chaphwm chaki twmei hei karuc khou kathai rey kanmei Singguanghmei kai khatnic Phwmguanghmei kai - mi kanei ti hei e. Ntumei nggaanvmei Singguanghmei nsyn ethei mi ta tei tanpui tanpu twna thay e. Tanpui-tanpu thu kawlaa nuh mak ge. Mi tei kumcna Phwmguanghmei kai tunac ngaanv hei tanpui tanpu e, reynungc riak theilayna tho kawlaa nuh mak ge. Mi hei ntaw nganvmei khou Singguanghmei kai tho Singguanghmei kai nchamc kaw-laa nuh mak ge twmei hei tatkey muay bam e. Tihkic, Phwmguanghmei kai khou thu gai baic ethei kawlaa nuh de, khugyang sw nuh de twmei thiak khou tatkey bam e.

24.4.1 Tanpui-Tanpu

Kaikhunh khatnamei ntumei nggaanvmei kaw-laamei ta tanpui tanpu kaw-laamei twna thay e. Mi hei charuangc rui nuh mak ge. Latkamv khang - Gaengmei kai tunac khatnic nggaanv khat khat ta kawlaa ethei mi tei **tanpui tanpu kawlaamei** ta duina **tanpui-tanpu** twna thay e. Tanpui tanpu kawlaamei hei nu e.

24.4.2 Tankhiak

Chaphwm chaki bam khwan sihnic puanc nchamcmei, hamh ethei diangc langvmei, tan-luh kaw nkhiakmei gay mak ge, nu e. Mi kumhmei ta **tankhiak** kaw e, **laengsang bam nkhiakmei** twna nic thay e.

24.4.3 Tankhi

Kaikhwang baih thu mictat kanmei luh rui kamauc khang kapuningc nac luh nunc ta laa nuh e. Tikic, mpouh nunc(puningc nunc) rui luh nac ta kamauc khang laa nuh mak ge. Mi kumhmei ta tei **tankhi** kaw e. Tankhi hei tankhiak khangsuangc sihnic sii e, nu e twna saa e.

24.5.0 CHAKHUANG LWAN

Ruangmei zaat khou chakhuang twmei hei nkauhmei nthukmei lwan e. Chakhuang hei phwm kanei kak khou, khu-gyang kak khou, charuangc khou, pei khou, khangchu luchu khou, tumei zangvmei khou, taanhmei ruaihmei khou, latsav luswan, ramhlam ramhbamv kataana khou nthukna tat re. Chakhuang lwan thaymakpui mei ta nzi nlaumei, ramhthaymakmei, ncham ncheilou makmei nac twna meic rui zauc e. Gaanthauh alauc thaymei, pouh chaih, pui neih kasuih thayna kawmei hei rey liangmei chakhuang lwan the.

24.6.0 NUMEI (Taboo)

Numei twmei latkaeng khou hei 'nuhmak ge' twmei na hamh e, tikic charuangc, ravchap rui 'thingcloumei' kabac - social sanction tei nai e. Ruangmei chapriak khou nu e twmei guay tei **nei** the. Nei the twmei thu sw nuhmak khe, nthaekc the. Kumna Ruangmei chapriak khou numei hei kasing geicna nai e. Kabah gaymei nic mpeyna nai e. Kabangc khou latkamv khang asaekc hylou e.

24.6.1 Charuangc khatnic chapriak khou numei

Latkamv -

(1) Meicdow nu e
(2) Kaihouc lauhut nu e.
(3) Lat saraamc saa nu e.
(4) Nsiang ndan nu e.
(5) Meic khaamv ta kahi nu e.
(6) Meic riang kathangv nu e.
(7) Kaamc laanc nu e.
(8) Laurei thing sw kadai nu e.
(9) Suc luc zouc luc bam sinic now ta swzak swchangamc nu e.
(10) Suc laa zouc laana mi tei phungc lana laupuk lauzaengc tatruan nu e.

Mi kumhmei charuangc khatnic ravchap ravriak khou numei peyna nai e. Mi guay hei twan lyam ethei chuk keylou e, mat nai e. Chuk tei kuak mak gethei situang rouctuang pat re - suhmei nuhmei, nggangh nteihmei, how nu how nei lungcpat re twna lwm e.

24.6.2 Saa numei

Lat hei saa numei latkaeng saapat ni khou, 'ravpui nu ndyna' hamh ethei 'meic saa nupui lat re tikic' twna kahou e.

Suc nthuk nau nthukmei bamv khou tatlouna 'theihmei' twmei latkaeng hei saa nu e. Kage naina saapui tac ethei 'ravpui nu ndyna' hamh ethei 'meic saa nupui lat re tikic' twna saa rey pwni. Mi tangv tei 'Sansina theihmei-ringhmei pat pwsinic kailuangc khou mbeihlou o' twna saa nuh e.

Meic khat zamh ravpuat simei, kheyliak, lwnchav ta saatowna, saa ngachapna khan nu e. Kumna mi kumhmei lat hei saamei ganv khou 'kakhang de tikic,' 'aney raana saa tuang de tikic' twmei hei saa rey pwni.

Agai amaana khatrui khatta si, zouc, mpangmei, lungckasicmei, chalwanmakmei kaw de tihkic gin kaw nu e, chagai chaguymei kaw nu e, zei latai kaw nu e, thingrau ruay kaw nu e.

Kumna saa numei lat peyna nai e. Mi kumhmei ganv khou tei saaa makna tho nuh mak twtuang nai e thei akumhna saa ni cho twmei tei kathiak nai geic e. Mi tei thay lana lat saa khang kage nai e.

24.6.3 How numei

Meic swluai dowluai bammei ta how nu e. Nrui mpu bammei ta how nu e. Nrui, nthanh daihmei ta how nu e. Lungcmaanv lungcmow bammei, swluai swtiat bammei ta how nu e. Mi kumhmei ta howmei ganv khou 'hownu hownei' hamh ethei 'amik nrouc gut re' twna saa e.

24.6.4 Kai numei

Kai numei twmei thu gin bangv nuh makmei ganv twtuang e. Ngaasatna puanhmei, kaikhunhmei theihmei nit, kiruai kanac puanhmei tingmik, rahrih simei patpui ganv - mi kumhmei guay khou reynungc kai nu bam khwan e. Mi kumhmei ganv khou kai numei hei kabah nai tina sw bam tuang e.

24.7.0 NEIMEI (Genna)

Nei hei kailuangc tuang, charuangc tuang sw e, charay nei mak ge. Tingkwm nei guay nai e - ting riu reymei khou **ting nei**, nrihthai key reymei khou **nrihthai nei**, napphwn key luai pwkhou **dihkap nei** - mikumhmei nei guay hei nai e. Kailuangc khou charyn tasiat pat tuang nai ethei nei e. Kai maikaumei, nwm khouringc kazi chaa makna kailuangc guangmei, theicsi theihmei, baenglaa zaymei - mi kumhmei patmei ganv khou nei e. Khwmsaengh ngaydaih ngay luaimei ganv khou nei e. Neimei hei neymei - Ravguangc khou huayneymei - suaihiamlou khang, chuk, nuan guay kuaklou khang, situang rouctuang pat mak khang raenghbangc keymakna kailuangc khou kangrim khimc bamna neymei twtuang e twna dinclou e.

24.8.0 RIANGRUAIH (Kinship Terms)

Pui khat pu khatna, kaikhunh khatna khou rui chaapat kingcpat lana, lungcking lungckuc tat kanmei zei khatnamei nunc ta tei riangruaih kaw e. Riangruaih khatnamei nunc tampy laa kari e. Guaih lungthu tu kariw e. Riangruaih hei duhmei khatnic naamei riangruaih twna saa nuh e. Riangruaih kasuih chuyna lunghmei hei ningtyngmei lwan e twna laa e.

24.8.1 Kiktaat

Mpouh riang khou keymei riangruaih lwan ta kiktaat kaw e. Kiktaat hei - Pouhpei - puipu - nah mpouh - tou - tak - pai - ru - kik - tat twna key e. Mi ti hei **kiktaat** twna kaw e.

24.8.2 zei-zik

Zei-zik tabui ta cho? Kaikhwang khourui mpaeng patkanmei luh nunc khourui chaapat kingcpat kanmei nunc ta zei-zik kaw e. Zei-zik hei mi hei kumcna zauc nuh e. Luh - tou - tou - tak - pai - ru - zei - zik. Mi riang ti hei zei-zik kaw e.

24.8.3 Chanaa-poutou-puineih lwan

chaphwm-chaki		- kaikhwang baih baihmei nowkaw mauhlaa nuhmei kaikhwang.
khu-gyang		- nkhu-nggyangmei kaikhwang/zaat nunc.
pou-maek	=	- now puningc lev gaanv. chaphwm chaki nggaanvmei nunc;

			- khugiangkai mei nggaanvmei nunc.
maek	=	maek	- tanpui gaanv; luh gaanv
		amaek	- atanpui gaanv.
duh	=	duh	
		aduh	- swanrey ta kawmei nchamc.
chanaa	=	chanaa	- pui khat pu khatna rui puanhmei nggaanvmei nunc;
			- pu chanaa nunc rui puanhmei nggaanvmei nunc;
			- pouh chanaa nunc rui puanhmei kiktaat nggaanvmei nunc.
punav	=		- kapu kanac.
puinav	=		- kapui kanac.
tanpui-puningc	=		- pui-pu khatnamei mpouh luh nunc;
			- chanaa punav nac mpouh luh nunc.
swanrey	=		- pui-pu nchamcmei nah aluh nunc;
			- kaikhwang khatnamei nah aluh nunc;
nei-mau	=		- neih lev mauh.
ning-tan	=		- now lev tanpui
chanaapui	=		- chanaa now nunc;
kaipui	=		- kaikhwang khatnamei now nunc.

24.9.0 KAWMEI LWAN (Addressing Terms)

Zaat khat puilat khou kawmei lwan - pu-chaih, pui-neih kawmei lwan khatnic riangruaih kasuihmei lwan nai e. Mi hei Ruangmei zaat nic nthukna tat re. Kabangc khou kawmei lwan asaekc hylou e.

pouh	=	pu pu, pupu pu; pui pu, puipu pu	
peih	=	pu pui, pupui pui; pui pui, puipui pui	
Pu	=	Pu, Pu Ravguangc	
pu	=	pu, apu, aputhauh	- apu daihmei, pudaihmei apu thyammei, puthyammei
		paa, apaa	- pa, apaa, paathyammei, paadaihmei (Paa, apaa,
pulauc, punau	=	apulauc apulaucmei apunau aputhyammei, paathyamei	maa, amaa hei reynungc thu kaw mak ge, tikic aseicdou thu geicna kaw the. Paa, maa hei universal swmei pu-pui ta kawmei latkaeng e.)
pui	=	pui, apui apuithauh apuilauc	- apui daihmei, puidaihmei - apui laucmei, puilaucmei apui thyammei, puithyammei
		maa, amaa	- maa, /amaa, /maathyammei, maadaihmei
chaibungc	=	achaicbungc	- puanc nchamcmei nggaanvmei gaanthauhmei nunc; - chanaa gaanthauhmei nunc;
chaimauc/chailuc	=		- puanc nchamcmei aluh gaanthauhmei nunc;

puilauc	=	puilauc	- apulauc now - chaphwmmei kai ntumei, chaphwmmeiluc tunac gaanthauh maihmei;
chai/puinau	=	chai, puinau	- chaibungc now
pouh	=	pouh apouc	- Chaphwmmeipu, kaikhwang baihmei gaanthauh nunc - pui kaikhwangmei ngaanvmei gaanthauh nunc; - pouh chaeng ny, chaih chaeng ny thay nthan makmei gaanthauh guay;
poubungc	=	apoucbungc	- pui lev nreih ndaamei nggaanvmei gaanthauhmei nunc;
		apoucrav	- (Meic asaekc na rui mi hei kaw e.)
neih	=	neih, aneic	- pu tanpui nunc; - now pui; - pouh now.

24.10.0 CHAKHUANG LAT

Zaatc khat zamh puilat khou chakhuang lat khatnic kawmei lwan nai e. Mi hei Ruangmei zaat khou nic nthukna tat re.Chakhuang lat khatnic kawmei lwan nthuihpui mei ta tei ncham nchei chuythaupui mei, meicphaatmei, ramhthaymei, daicthaupui mei, ningtyngmei kaw e.

Kabangc khou hei Ruangmei puilat sinswmei chakhuang lat lwan asaekc hylou e.

(1)	Nyan the, zaengswlou tho	- Nyan the, zip la tho.
(2)	Peipouc tei mphaih bam di he.	- Peipouc tei zip bam di he.
(3)	Dui bun nchulou la ho	- Duilow nchu la ho.
(4)	Nap phanvlou thi ny ?	- Nap tu tha ?
(5)	Mpaeng tat ni he, dui tat ni he	- Toilet tat ni he.
(6)	Kairangv key ni he	- Latrine tat ni he.
(7)	Ramh chaeng tat ni he	- Latrine tat ni he.
(8)	Zouhbuangc hei puanclou o.	- Zouh zangv o.
(9)	Kaamcthau khwan tho de.	- Tat tho de.
(10)	Kai biak ganvrih di kho	- Kai tat di kho.
(11)	Mi tei haamvlaanlou na ro	- Mi tei tiilaanlou o. Laalaanlou o.
(12)	Khanghpy guangtangclou bam the	- Khanghpy guang bam the.
(13)	Khanghpy rui sinthaulou rey pwni.	- Khangpy rui tuthaulou rey pwni.
(14)	Latgay tuang lugay tuang saalou pwng e.	- Gay gay khang saalou pwng e.
(15)	Theikw theinav nganvna ningtow bam	- Nthuandou nganvna bam pwni e. ningtow pwni e.

Part IV
PHUAKNA HYMEI
(Composition)

18.0 PACNA THAYMEI
(Comprehension)

Comprehension twmei hei tiiloumei latdangv (passage) hei pac lana kabac thay ngammei ta e. Hykeyloumei lat ta pacna kabah thay ngammei twmei hei ntaw ganv zamh nchamnac nunc tuang madanhmei sw nina e. Mi latdangv tei *pat changh kanmei* hamhethei *kalingmei (factual), ramh khat lwn dinhmei (description), latpoumei (report), kaphianh kazanhmei latdangv (discursive), agii latdangv (argumentative), ramh lam akhat ta kamei kamei rui zauhmei ramhou (perspective)* - mi kumhmei guay zamh latdangv guay ta e.

Tiiloumei latdangv ta mincna pac lana thanv bammei latdaw tii khang e. Mi kumhmei latdaw hy ni khou kabangc khou tiiloumei lam asaekc hei thay rey khang kage nai e.

(a) Tiiloumei latdangv tihei nzaeng nzaengna khatnic tasiakhna pac suak rey tho.

(b) Tiiloumei latdangv zamh *gist, kabiswmei latlangv* thaypat khang karamc o.

(c) Pac suaklou guai tina thaymak kumc di he twethei pac katamvkey dat ro.

(d) Latkaeng kabah kunghmei pac ariu e twna aliauhmei, lunghning hanmei sw rio. Mi phaan tei makumh khath tw nina e.

(e) Latdangv tei pacluailou kan ethei thanv bammei latthanv ta akhatkhat swna pac tho.

(f) Latdangv khou hylou bammei latrian kahakthak tei hamhna nang raana latkaeng piuna latdaw hy tho.

(g) Latkaeng nchamcmei kabac phupat khang saa pwkhou nchamc liangmei ta kapah nina e.

(h)) Latdaw guay tei hyzin hyzaamei hamhna kuidwnmei latkaeng *key words* lwn thayna hy nina e.

18.1.0 Kabangc khou tiiloumei latdangv hei pac lana chadaa kho:

Socrates hei chaengluang chaengluang hamhethei kaithyan bamvbamv khou neihmaryn ruan zingczingc tat bam khwan e. Kata kachuclou niimei khatnic kakhou thay niina latthanv guangna thanv pwmei ta ningna tat bam tuang khwań e. Kaluanluan kamei rui saa bammei lat ta meic nunc rui laalou thaymak hakpui ganv nic tinailou e. Kazaeng thu meic nunc rui ningbam makmei lam azuh khou kamei rui latthanv azuh thanv e, meic nunc rui thay nthan ngammak bammei lam azuh khou nic thanv e. Tihkic miguay hei kamei rui ramh e ninglou mec. Socrates rui ningmei tho meic guayna hei kakhang khang ning nchumh thay khang ncham nina e twmei hei e. Kamei rui ningmei tho puiruhnac hei tabui chwn tei nchumh liang cho twmei thaypat ngammei pumtan nai nina e, nchumhmei na hamhna howgaymei khatnic laalou nuhmei ta thaypat ngammei twmei hei e. Socrates rui kahawmei tho Athens hei nthuihthikhmei kaidai akhat tisw nii e. Hiaksuimei kaidai tisw khang tho dihnac guay chwn gaymei lev nchumhmei lungning naina taanhmei na rui ngam khang de. Heic zaengrui chaengluang khou hamhethei kaithyan bamvbamv khou kaucna latthanv azuh thanv tat bammei khatnic kaphianh kazanhna maansei azuh lungning khou kabah thay ngam makmei lat saa bammei kiu mi khangrui e.

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latthanv hei latkaeng 25-30 dou khou daw o:

(a) Tabui sw khang Socrates hei chaengluang khou hamhethei kaithyan bamvbamv khou neihmaryn ruan zingczingc tat bam tu cho?

(b) Socrates rui thanvmei hamhethei saa bammei lat ta meic nunc rui laalou thay mak bammei tabui sw tina cho?

(c) Nthuihmei laatow khang Socrates rui tabui khou lwm cho?

(d) **Latdangv khourui tiilou bammei latkaeng lev nchamcmei kabac kapahpat ro:**
   (i) maansei kaguayna
   (ii) Nthuihthikhmei

Latdaw:

(a) Socrates rui Athens hei nthuihthikhmei kaidai akhat swna kasiamhthau nii khwan e. Karaana rui taanc nuhmei taanv hamh tina meic geihgeihmei bamv khou ruanna mi khang rui latthanv azuh thanvna kaphianh kazanh tat bam tw e.

(b) Maansei nunc rui ning bam makmei khatnic thay nthan ngam makmei latthanv azuh Socrates rui thanv e. Nchumhmei na hamhna howgaymei khatnic laalou nuhmei chwn nai khang rui saa tina meic nunc rui Socrates lat ta laalou thay mak bam tw e.

(c) Nthuihmei laatow khang Socrates rui ningmei tho puiruhnac chwn hei nchumh liangmei thaypat ngammei pumtan naimei, nchumhmei na hamhna howgaymei khatnic laalou nuhmei lungning khou e. Mi na rui nthuih ngam pwni.

(d) (i) puiruhnac
(ii) hiaksuimei

18.2.0 Kabangc khou tiiloumei latdangv hei pac lana latthanv guay hei latkaeng 25-30 dou sinswna daw o:

UN rui kauc ndauhlou e twmei thu dilungmei maansei guay rui karamv, kadui, ramvlangv khatnic puatc guay lev kariang naina guang nimei kin azuh khang nganvna nthukmei dam laylaa bam nina de. Dilungmei guay rui karamv, kadui ta gaek khang khatnic gaekmei khou nkhav bam nina e.Ramhsic ariu nuhmei puat guay dilungmei ramv khou kaniw tuang nuhloumei maekna rylou nuh mak ge khatnic ganclou nuh mak ge. Mi kumc taancpatlou tuang nai ethei pumh khang kabiu mak khang kaphianhlou nina e. Military taanvdwan, dilungmei maansei panty ta kapin karaam nimei kaniw tuang nuhloumei maekna kaniw ramv khou taancpat nuh mak ge. Dilungmei rui machuangloumei kazauhna state rui guhsw gahsw makna, lungning nthanna, dilungmei ramv, ramvlangv khatnic puatc guay lam khou lwn thaylou nina e khatnic saahyam suanhyamlou nina e. Mbuna dilungmei ramvdui riak, tatnahlwan, chapriak khatnic ramvpouc lwan thaylou nina e.

(a) Dilungmei ramvdui gaekmei khatnic gaekpui lwan khou UN rui tabui saalou cho?

(b) Dilungmei guay khang ramhsic ariu nuhmei khourui gaekpatlou khang UN rui tabui dinclou cho?

(c) Dilungmei ta gaek khang state rui tabui nthukmei dam laalou nina cho?

(d) (i) 'Dilungmei' zamh nchoumei (antonym) latkaeng tabui cho?

(ii) 'Lwanloumei' hamhethei 'laypuancloumei' twmei lev nchamcmei latkaeng latdangv khourui kapahpat ro.

Latdaw:

(a) Dilungmei guay rui karamv, kadui, ramvlangv khatnic puatc guay lev kariang gaymei naina kin azuh khang nganv gaekna ngaek bam nina e. Ramvdui gaekmei khatnic ngaekmei khou dilungmei guay rui nthukmei dam laana nkhav nina e twna UN rui saalou e.

(b) Dilungmei guay ta UN rui kadan e. Ramhsic ariu nuhmei guay dilungmei ramv khou lou nuh mak ge khatnic ganclou nuh mak ge. Suai nangcna taancpatlou tuang nai ethei pumh khang kabiu mak khang swlou nina e.

(c) Dilungmei ta gaek khang State rui guhsw gahsw makna, lungning nthanna, dilungmei ramv, ramvlangv khatnic puatc guay lam khou lwnthaylou nina e khatnic saahyam luhhyamloumei dam hei laalou nina e.

(d) (i) tasangmei/gin/gindicmei
(ii) machuangloumei

18.3.0 Kabangc khou tiiloumei latdangv hei pac lana latthanv guay hei latkaeng 30 dou sinswna daw o:

Lat twmei hei saa bammei mei tei lev diangc hakmei riang nai e. Mi hei ntam nuhmakmei kanaek kanei naimei syankangh paek akhat kumh tuang de. Lat hei saaloumei maansei nai saanv na nai bam pwni. Lat zamh kagunc kagac tho saa bammei maansei nunc na tei rui tii ngam e. Lat hei kasuc swmei e kalamthu saa bammei maansei guay tei kasuc swmei mei tina e. Dihlwan khou, syandui lwan khou, lanvguanh lanvdaenghmei lwan khou, charuangc lwan khou khatni chapriak lwan khou zauc pwkhou lat hei kabi sw liangmei e. English, French khatnic German lat guay hei kabi swmei khatnic nkauhmei lat re kazaengthu kabiswmei khatnic nkauhmei maansei nunc rui mi lat hei saa e. Heiczaengrui kaniw kandic khou na hamhna mi lat guay tihei meic guay rui ncham bam e. Tihkic Romanian, Serbain khatnic Malay lat hei tho kaniw na rui hamhna meic baihmei rui kathai karianglou mak ge. Daicthaumei maansei lat ta tho ntakmei, nyngtyngmei azuh rui asei nganv gaek bam e. Latkamv khang reynungc Greekmei lat tihei daicthaulou reymei lat timei tho kandih pyruc khou lunghmei guay rui kathai bam khwan e. Greekmei lulat khourui gaengmei gaymei azuh nic phungcpat bam khwan e. Kum khwan sihnic saamei maansei raukeymei rui kalam swna ntaw ganv khou Greeklat tihei kakandic khou na hamhna baihmei kandic rui tho ntaamvkey the.

Latthanv

(a) Tabui zaeng lat lev saa bammei maansei tei lev kanaek kanei naimei syankaengh paek akhat kumh tuang de saa bam tu cho?

(b) Lat zamh kabiswmei asaekc hy o.

(c) Reynungc Greeklat lev ntaw kaanc Greeklat zamh tabui khiannahmei nai cho?

(d) Tiiloumei theilayna hypat ro:

(i) Nyngtyngmei (Kabah nchoumei latkaeng)

(ii) Kabiswmei (Kabah nchamcmei latkaeng)

Latdaw:

(a) Lat lev saa bammei mei tei lev diangc hakmei riang nai e. Saalounimei maansei nai saanv na lat hei nai bam pwni. Lat nai saanv maansei zaat akhat zamh lwn thay pwni. Kumtina saa tw e.

(b) Dihlwan khou, syandui lwan khou, lanvguanh lanvdaenghpui lwan khou, charuangc lwan khou khatnic chapriak lwan khou lat rui kasuc sw e. Lat paanrui mi kumhmei taanvdaih hei taancpat ngam e.

(c) Reynungc Greeklat ta tho kandih py ruckhou lunghmei guay rui kathai bam khwan e. Gaengmei gaymei lulat azuh nic mi khourui laatow bam khwan e. Tihkic ntaw tho Greeklat saamei raukey the. Kumtina kandih baihmei guay rui ntaamv the.

(d) (i) ngganghmei/pagiimei

(ii) kasuc swmei

KATHAIDWAN

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latdangv guay hei pac lana thanvmei latthanv guay daw o:

A. Tingzyn neih khyamkey the. Nchu rihriimei pwan aliu guang kahouh the. Thawruay guay nic kakai kabou nzwan kan the. Tu mbaa zangv mbaamei guay lwn nic chaengluang khou how geic the. Tat ntyng dinghding thay makmei nic peyna tat bam e. Miguay tei howna ai nuic nii thuai mak ge. Ai nuic niimei kiu tho alauc nunc tingthai reitu khang nzaekckulou lana key dat thay mak bammei

ta de. Mphutlou tithei thingbang thurui kaluang karaana siauckey pwni thayna ai nthiamna tikeylou the. Mi dyng khoutei chaengdaeng lunghmei kainungc akhat khou 'bak' twmei ranv hakmei khwan akhat chu e. Ai pakgut pwki Aguina zei rak khou punlou bam khwan the. Kalam thay mec, kadaeng khou nic thingdangv daihmei akhat how e. Kamik nic rakpat dat mak khe. Guang anaana zauc pwki azanc hyloumei mailaek baanrun ta nic how e. 'Amay di the ke ai hei' twna ningna ai ding hahlahlaa bam duc the.

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latthanv guay hei latkaeng 30 dou khou daw o:

(a) Neihkhat tingzyn hymei rui ariu kanmei tingzyn lwnlung tei twkumh cho?

(b) Hymei rui alauc guay ta twkumh kadanlou kan cho?

(c) Aguina twkumh sw kan cho?

(d) Tabui zaeng hymei rui karaana amay di the twna saa bam tu cho?

(e) (i) 'Nowsuanhmei' lev nchamcmei latkaeng tiiloumei latdangv khourui kapahpat ro.

(ii) 'Kanow hamhethei kagaanv kanac maekmei' twmei kabac zamh latkaeng phupat ro.

B. Lat khat saa pwkhou hamhethei hy pwkhou mi lat zamh kalingmei lwnlung na tei sinsw nina e twmei lat maek ge. Saabam hybammei mei kakhang kadow chaamei, gaymei theilayna sinsw nuh de. Lat kahak hei gaanv khatna zamh charay puat hamh e. Meicguayna kariumei puiruhnac zamh e. Kaganv kaganv khou lat lwn-gwan hei kalaicpat-gut re. Puilat baihbaihmei mei nunc rui kaniw nchamc pary parav rahmei ganv khou lat baihmei khat zamh lwn-gwan lay nzeic khang nthuk thuai mak ge. Diangc pwkhou khatnic kariu karaa pwkhou lat khat lev khat kariu karaa gutmei, latkaeng sinswgutmei hei kachav e. Lat guay khou zaatc daihmei hamhethei gay-nkauhmei lat zamh thiak nzeicmei hei kachav de. Mi kumhmei lat hei meicgeihmei rui thay nii e, ncham nii e. Mi kumhmei lat hei saathiat gay e. Mi ruc khoutei, puilat khou na saa suak kunghmei latbamv tei saapat khang daicthau hianmei baihmei lat zamh latkaeng sinswmei zamh kalam azuh nai e.

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latthanv guay hei latkaeng 30 dou sinswna daw o:

(a) Lat hei tabui zaeng charay puat hamh e tw tuang cho?

(b) Puilat na rui ramhguay saapat khang kungc e. Tabui rui nkhavlouna saapat nuh cho?

(c) Meic geihmei rui thay nii, ncham nii bammei lat tei akumhpui lat cho?

(d) (i) 'Layluaihmei' twmei latkaengc kabac kapahpat ro.
(ii) 'Nkauhmei' twmei nchoumei latkaeng kabac hy o.

C. Baihmei latbamv khat ningtow e, nthukmei thu hamh e. Aniw meic geicnganv tan rui chaeng khou tat bam e. Telephone number khat amuc pwng e twna chaeng khou che kiak khatna keylou tu zauc e hythaulou khang. Meicgeihmei gutna chaeng khoutei che kiak khatna khuaic me phu e, mphang kan mak ge. Mi khoutei aniw khang kadathdat khwan e. Mphuam mphaamei India zamh chaeng khou daicthaumei aniu, che kiak khatna nganvna keylou makmei kandic khou guang pwmei. Aniw kandic khou kumcna chaeng khou kaigeymei mei how mak ge. Akumhna kaniw chaeng guay heicdi nthanna bam tu cho? Nkhamh khou thu aniu nic thaypat the - gari nthaekcbamv parking, meic guay guang kariupui bamv, tatna zauhpui bamv, public park hamhethei restaurant khou guangmei mei kapwmna plastic khaulauna khatkhat sin lana kadaeng kadaeng khou keylou bammei che kiakkiak, mphuammei guay kathouc kadwan swna khuaicthau e. Mitei kumcna mphuam mphaamei khuaicganhmei tei mpeyna swchuymei nunc taanv swna laa bam e. Mphuammei guay tei khuaic lana kadaeng khou naimei 'dust bin' khat khou phaiclou e. Meic kathuihna rui mi hei kumcna chaeng hei nthan-nthinghna lou khang ningmei zaat timei tho Japan hei kaguayna pangc khou nthan nthinghmei kandic e twna saa pwkhou tabui kadathdat bam khang naina cho!

Tiilou bammei latthanv guay hei latkaeng 30 dou khou daw o:

(a) Meic kai kandic chaengluang khou mphuammei how makmei tabui sw tina cho?

(b) India khou naimei chaeng lwnlung akumh cho?

(c) Tabui taanv taanhmei maansei ta Japan khou 'swchuymei nunc taanv' twna laa cho?

(d) Tabui zaeng Japan hei nthanthinghmei kandic sw bam tu cho?

(e) Tiiloumei theilayna hypat ro:

(i) 'Nthukmei' [nchamcmei latkaeng kabac]

(ii) 'Mphuammei' [nchoumei latkaeng kabac]

D. Ai school kutat rey liangmei tingmik tei amuc mak he. Adih nzian cho school piangpat pwkhou nzianmei apui apu rui ata kai nduanghlou khang ding nkhwan bam pwmei tei! Apammei guay lev palupna kabiumei tei nic ningtow e. Ai na rui kapy swniina, apammei guay ta ai lat thouc e. Kum khwan sihnic kapy swniimei ai mark tho mphang geic ngam mak khwan e. Alat piuloumei apammei guay rui mark mphang geic tanhtanh kan e. Mitei ningpat rethei achwnsii e. Ntaw nganv ai rui apammei guay tuang chaengzaymei sw nii e tihkic mitei tho nuhmak khe. Asuangc kauh ngam kan the, thay mbu ngam kan the. Ai atuang school ta nzian e. Talic palupmei, lu suanmei khatnic lat thay khang nchamlou e. Aramzian na di the, school rui tho ata thaylou bam dat tuhamh the.

Tiiloumei latthanv guay hei latkaeng 30 dou khou daw o:

(a) Hymei rui tabuibui lam ningtow cho?

(b) Hymei rui kachwn sii bammei tabui zaeng rui cho?

(c) Hymei rui ntaw nganv chaengzaymei sw nii kih sw nuh makmei lam dinc o.

(d) Hymei rui katuang school ta nzian bammei tabui nai tina cho?

(e) (i) 'Apammei' zamh nchoumei latkaeng hy o.

(ii) 'Nzian e' twmei 'nzian' hei noun form khou ngguanhpat ro.

(iii) 'Talic palupmei' hei noun e. Verb khou ngguanhpat ro.

E. Daicthau bammei chabwan nunc khou siimei nchiwna ariu raph nuhmei pangc khou AIDS hei akhat the. HIV rik meicpumc khou gutlou raph khourui AIDS nnaumei nganvmei khou symtom asaekc nai e. Howpat rey liangmei kiu mi rik gutloupui tangv neidak kanei khourui kathumh nganv ravmanhmei nai pwni, pysuc pwni, ryanruh suc pwni, mwang khatnic ruakc khou nggai patmei how pwni, gih nthak pwni khatnic kabamv kabamv khou puamc pwni. Miguay hei

howpat mak sihnic meicpumc lungc thangc tho karik kakpat geic khitkhith bam tuang di the. Mi rik hei nai cho maek cho twmei tho zei test sw pwkhou na rui thayngam khang di the. Karik nai the twmei meic rui thaymak sihnic gaanvkhat khou tho gutlou nuh de. Pumh khou karik kak geicpatpui sik pumh tuang immune system ta ti-nsuankey bam tu the. AIDS rui nnaumei kanganv tanghmei ganv twmei hei ganthauh akhat khou HIV rik naengvloumei nungc khouteirui tingkwm 8-9 lungc khatnic alauc khourui tingkwm akhat lungc khou howpat re twna chak ge. Mi tangv tho theihmei twmei kiu di the.

Tiiloumei latthanv guay hei latkaeng 30 dou khou daw o:

(a) Daicthau bammei chabwan nunc khou chiwna siimei ravpuat guanglou nuh bammei tabui zaeng rui cho?

(b) AIDS zamh symtom asaekc hypat ro.

(c) AIDS rui nnauna kanganv tanghmei ganv twmei hei ganvthauh lev alauc khou khiannahmei tabui cho?

(d) Tukumhpui lwan khou rui HIV rik pumh khou nai the twmei thay ngam pwni cho?

(e) (i) 'Zaeng chanei dak' twmei latkaeng kabac phupat ro.

(ii) 'Puamhmei' zamh nchoumei latkaeng hy o.

19.0 NOTE KASIAMHMEI
(Note Making)

Ntaw aniw lungc bammei zuk hei nyngtyng azuh rui padikmei zuk ge. Kaganv hei syan di the. Kaganv sw amaan makna katumc kasanna taanv guay luai nuangh khang twmei zuk the. Latrik hymei guay khang nic 'Note Making' twmei hei kaganv sw amaan makna taancgay khang twtuang e. Latrik akhat pac pwkhou aniw paclou kanmei guay ningtow ngammak ge. Meic akhat rui pary gaymei raclou pwkhou kaguayna ningtow ngammak ge. Miguay hei note kasiamhmei rui chalahna ningtow ngam pwni. Mihei rui kuidwnmei lat guay ta ti-ningtowlou e. Note kasiamhmei rui

(a) kabii swmei latbamv khatnic nsunh nsah ti-ningtowlou e.

(b) gaanvkhat rui saaloumei hamhethei aniu rui pacloumei ta hy katamvpat dat nuh khang nkhavlou e.

(c) kataanv geihmei, nyngtyngmei, chamv khuammei mi kumhmei nunc khang gaengmei peyna tiilou e.

19.1.0 Akumhna Note kasiamh ni cho?

Note kasiamh pwkhou kabangc khou tiiloumei asaekc hei thay rey khang kage nai e.

(a) Note hei duina hy e.

(b) Kuidwnmei latkaeng hamhethei latbamv kapahpat nina e.

(c) Latrian hy suak mak sihnic nuh de.

(d) Tiilou bammei latdangv khou naimei *idea* tei kaluan chaana nzangpat dat nuh khang hylou nina e. Kalangv kalangv khaklangcna hylou nina e.

(e) Latkaeng swna hy mak sihnic symbol hamhethei sammei lwan (abbreviation) khou hy nuh e. Aniw rui thay nuh khang aniw raana rui latkeang sammei hy nuh de. Latkamv khang 'Ravguangc' twmei phaan 'rg', 'hamhethei' phaan 'ht', 'Luangmai' phaan 'Lmi', 'Tamenglong' phaan 'Tml' twna hy nuh de. Mi Note hei nang raana araana thay nuh khang hypui tuang e. Kumsihnic meicgeihmei rui duina hymei thiak, kalwan nai ethei tho mitei piuna hymei gay ranv e.

Summarisation/Abstraction:

Mihei tiiloumei latdangv akhat zamh tiduiloumei ta e. Precis Writing thiak lev nchamc de. Tihkic mi na rui dui hian nina e. Mihei tho tiiloumei latdangv zamh *idea* tei duidutna hypat khang e. Latrik book kasap 400/500 mei *abstract* tei kasap 4/5 na khou duina hypat khang twmei hei e. Scholar, scientist, company manager- mi kumhmei guay hei latrik tadii tadiimei ta pac bam khang kaganv maek ge tihkic *abstract/summary* tei pac lana siimei gaymei lwn thay tuang e. 'Note Making' khou tiiloumei kuidwnmei *idea* khou tei rui *abstract/summary* hypat nina e.

19.2.0 Kabangc khou tiiloumei latdangv hei pac lana Note kasiamh o khatnic note khoutei rui *summary/abstract* hypat ro:

Lungcsiimei hei rav syang e twna maansei nunc rui lwm e. Syan sinna lungcgaymei hei neihlaamei khatnic panty amanvna lunghmei bangbii e twna ning e. Kandih hei sucrih maekna, nchu nzaenghna lungc pwni e. Tihkic thay bammei tei di the, lungcsii sihnic lungning nthanna, liwkeyna lunghmei kai tei khiukhingh rui peic padikloumei meicsiimei guangckai khangsuangc neihlaana lungc e. Pianthayna lunghmei khou nchu-nzaenghmei nai e. Tybangh rui padikna lunghmei guangcnac nunc tei ai zauclouna nzian e kazaeng thu kaniw panty khou tabui gaat bam cho twmei kaniw thay mak ge. Lungcsii sihnic lungning nthanmei kai khoutei mamavmei, gaengh swmei maek ge. Lungh ryanraamei khatnic guhsw gahswmei maek ge. Kandih namruc khou meicsaengc meicdaihmei kiu tho thow cho twethei aniw rui kathaipat re mikiu tho kaniw hei lungcsii lungcsangna daicthaumei geih thu de.

Notes:

1. Lungcsiimei hei rav syang e ning e.

1.1 Syanlanv nai ethei kandih hei chuzaengh pwni ning e.

2. Lungcsiimei rui pianthay hian e.

2.1 Lungcgaymei 'suangc lungcsiimei rui mamav, gaengh swmei rau e.

2.2 Lungh ryanraa rau e, chuzaengh hian e

3. Meic daihmei geih tho lungcsiimei nac nunc de

Summary:

Maansei rui ningmei tho lungcsiimei hei rav syang e. Syanlanv nai ethei nchu-nzaenghmei nai pwni. Tihkic mitei hamh e lungcsiimei rui pianthay hian e khatnic mamav, gaengh swmei rau e. Meicdaihmei geih tho lungcsiimei nac nunc e.

19.3.0 Kabangc khou tiiloumei latdangv hei pac lana Note kasiamh o khatnic note khoutei rui *summary/abstract* hypat ro:

Maansei guay nthanna thay e twmei tho ryanraamei maekmei panty maek ge. Kalim key makna neih souh mak ge. Mwnbang kasau nai e twna lungh hamh tuang sw lak nina e. Tihkih kasau naimei bang khou howgaymei mwn puangc e twna neihlaa thay nina e. Kandih khou lunghmei tho kungc changh kungcna lungh tw de, ryanraa katuakmei ariu pwnic khaegvthayna lungc nina de. Panty lam khou maansei azuh ningkeylou makna lungc e. Kathouc taanc chuyna kapuatrith phungc thaypui mei tei tho mi mbaanv khou pian makna lungh mak ge twmei thay khang nai e. Mi mbaanv hei tho aniw rui zauc bammei maengzau kumh tuang de. Nuicna zauc ethei lay nuic, kapna zauc tithei lay kap twtuang de. Mikrun haenghmei khou zauc tithei ramh kapwmna haengc, nrymmei khou zauc tithei nrym ngam twmei tei lev nchamc de. Heic zaengrui gaanhmei twn tei zaucthay nina e tabui cho tihkic ramh kataana khou gaymei gaanhmei biak nai e. Kakhanhna taancpatpui mei khang panty hei chanui chapav de tihkic ning nana, makumh nana bammei khang thu ryanraa zaengsiimei e. Ngguay, kaluanluan zaengsiimei e saa nuh de tihkic chanui chapav nic ariu katup sih de. Kumhpui zaengrui aniw panty tho aniw rui kapahmei tei raph di the.

Notes:

1. Panty khou ryanraamei guanglou pwni
2. Lungc kungc e.

2.1 Khaengvthay nina e.

3. Pian liangmei- kathouc taanc chuymei
4. Panty hei lungning mikrun e.

4.1 Chanui lev zaengsiimei kariu e.

4.2 ...aniw rui kapahpui nyng di the.

Summary/Abstract:

Panty hei ryanraamei ariu pwni. Kunghmei panty e. Heic zaengrui khaengvthayna lungc nina e. Mi mbaanv khou pian liangmei twmei kiu kathouc taanc chuyna taanhpui mei tei e. Mikrun kumhmei panty hei chanui lev zaengsiimei kariu e. Aniw panty tho aniw rui kapahpui nyng di the.

19.4.0 Kabangc khou tiiloumei latdangv hei pac lana Note kasiamh o khatnic note khoutei rui *summary/abstract* hypat ro:

Ntaw hei kanganv tangcna daicthaumei zuk di the. Mi khou suai dai suaimei akhat nai e. Aniw nyngtyng rui tabui sw khang cho twmei hei e. Aniw nyngtyng rui aniw ta bangh tiswlou the. Science rui maansei khang gaengmei, gaymei padik tiilou the. Rav ngamv tei kumc aniw ningpui ganv nai the. Tihkic tho alaucna ta siamruai swmei kumc aniw machine siamruai sw e. Latkamv khang machine ta akumh sinsw ni cho aniw thay mak ge. Machine tho maansei bangc khang, baansin kasiamhlou tuang e; kumecho tihkic machine rui maansei kaipouc swlyn the. Machine ta chakwng chaluy swna kasiamruai sw bam khang maansei ta piu the. Machine hei tho zianthay makmei kaipouc akhat re. Petrol, diesel, kerosine kachaengc thayna, kakwm kaganv chaana, tiilou e. Kaniw rui kahawpui ganv khou tiilou mak gethei kaniw kalang e, kataanv taanc mu e. Kalungpuamcna puakbak ge. Mi khou maansei khang khatnic haengvmei khang kabiu kachei nuhpui tuang raana e. Kumna kaniw ta ramhthay makmei ngasatna ta makav kumc lunghgutna siamruai sw khang nai e. Aniw tho bangh kumc machine ta nkhwanna bam e. Ramhthay khang nai e tabui cho tihkic maanseina rui khouringh ta sinswmei kumc machine rui nic aniw ta sinsw nipui ganv guang pwni e.

Notes:

1. Daicthaumei ramsuai

1.1 Machine sinsw thay mec

2. Maansei rui hamhna machine rui kaipouc sw the.

3. Machine- zianthay makmei kaipouc

3.1 Bangh kumc machine ta nkhwan e.

3.2 Swchuylou mecthei puakbak ge, kabiu kachei e.

4. Maansei rui khouringh ta sinswmei kumc machine rui maansei ta sinsw pwni.

Summary:

Daicthaumei zuk zamh suaimei akhat tho aniw machine ta sinsw thay makmei e. Machine kaipouc aniw sw makna machine rui sw the. Machine tho zianthay makmei kaipouc e. Bangh kumc aniw machine ta nkhwan e. Swchuylou mecthei puakbakna aniw khang kabiu kacheimei tii e. Khouringh ta aniw rui sinsw kumc, machine rui aniw ta sinsw guang pwni.

KATHAIDWAN

Kabangc khou tiiloumei latdangv hei pac lana Note kasiamh o. Notes khou tei rui abstract nic hypat ro.

A. "Tun tanhmei nai ethei chaeng nai e", twmei hei nyngtyng latchap e. Mitei ningtowna chalingcdingna taanhmei guay khang khamvnamvmei guay ta zaw puancriu ngam pwni. Mihei kapaek khat zawkauhmei kiu di the. Mi latbamv hei panty taanvbamv guay- school, college, namv, mbaanv kapwm khou tatnah nuh e. Zawpauh ni de twmei khang tho zawpauhmei kiu di the. Mi kumhmei lungning ningmei maansei guay khourui kunghmei lam guay pak kan e. Nepoleon pantylwan khou mihei how e. Kapumtan khatnic kalungning guay kataanv khou tigut palwmlou e. Karicmei chaenglwan khou howmumei nai e twna poulou tikhou "Howmumei maek ge" twna meic tat nuh makpui ramv tei chaenglwan daihmei ti-ngguanhlou kan e. "Ngam makmei" twmei tho mpangmei dictionary khou na naimei latkaeng de twna Nepoleon rui saa khwan e. Mpangmei, zammei khang chaeng maek ge. Taancthaumei kathuih 'ai sw mak nuh mec' twmei chwn naina nchamnac guay chakuy chaluyna latrik ncham nina e. Katitna suailou khourui panty khou liangcthau dat ngam makmei phac khou keylou e, mitei patmak khang ramhthay nina e. Lungning sinriapna, sii-gay thayna nyngtyng ntaanvmei hei nchamnac guay zamh ntipmei lungcdyng sw nina the.

B. Kandih namruc khou ringc bammei maansei guay kathiak, kasuai kadam, kalat, kalu baicbaicna Ravguangc ta kalum e. Meic gaanvkhat na sihnic Ravguangc ta how mak ge tihkic Ravguangc lam tho meic guayna saa e. Ravguangc nai e twmei lwm makmei nic nai e. How makmei ta lwm ngam makmei maansei azuh nai muay e. Neihkhat gaanvkhat Ravguangc lam thanv khang amuh daeng guang khwan e. Amuh khou kamei rui thanv e, "Ravguangc tho kabamv kathuih bam e

twna tabui khang meic nunc saa bam tu cho?" Maanseina ta tabui khang riaplou bam tu cho twmei nic kamei thaynii khwan e. Matat khat makumh manghmang lana Amuh tei niangdwm akhat laathauna mipu py khoutei siauc the. Mi putei suc the, ramhsw dat khang thay mak khe. Latzankai khou latzanpouc rui Amuh khou "tabui khang niangdwm siauc bam cho?" thanv the. Amuh rui daw e, "mitei alatdaw the. Mi putei kapy suc kan the tihkih suhmei tei akhou lyanlou ngammak ge. Heic zaengrui Ravguangc nai e tihkih mitei lyanlou ngammak ge." Kapy suhmei putei kabah thay khwan the tihkih Ravguangc rui maansei ta tho riap lak nina de twna ning khwan e.

C. Kandih kaguayna tuang nyngtyngmei nunc guang kaduaina 'akumhethei kandih hei rih maekmei kandic sw kho tov' twna kaphianh khwan e. Rey liangmei lungcdyng tei kandih khatkhat ta machuang kariimei twmei hei e. Machuangloumei twmei hei daic hakmei latkaeng e tihkic nsamvpariatna saa pwkhou 'taanc nchamcmei' tw tuang de. Kandih khat rui khat ta pam kumc taanc nchamc ethei latlu hei geic lak ge. Latlu daihmei guay nganvna nchiwna hyamkey ngam pwni. Ngamvzi, kathaek, lanv, puanhbamv lam khou gaenghsw kari makna, mamav zauczihmei chwn ganckeyna taanc ethei sucrih nai lak ge. Kaneimei lungcdyng kiu tho dihriak tat twan mak khang twmei hei e. Dihnac guay rui kakandic-dic tuang dihriak tei piu nchumhna lungc nina e. Kandih kapwmna tuang swmei riak hei nic piu nina e. Mitei kumcna kandih kapwmna meic guayna khang gay nchamcmei taanvbamv guay khou machuang karina khatnic dihriak piuna taanc tithei sucrih nai dat lak khe. Mi mbaanv khou rihswmei twmei hei amaankey kan ni de.

20.0 KALINGMEI LWN DINHMEI

(Factual Description)

Kandih khou aniw rui tingmik pwm puatc, meic, kamung, kabamv, kalwan how e. Howlouna gaanvkhat khou rac tho rac kadai dat thay de tihkic howlou, thaylou kanmei kalingmei lam tei tho hykey khang kunghmei azuh ariu e. Mihei hy chadaa mak khourui e. Ramh akhat lam thay nthanna hypat ngam khangrui nchamnac guay karamc nina e. Mihei kalangv panguh swna thaylangcpat khang nai e. Miguay kiu thu, -

(a) Puatc akhat lam piakna dinhmei,

(b) Maansei akhat lam piakna dinhmei,

(c) Kabamv akhat lam piakna dinhmei,

(d) Kalwan akhat lam piakna dinhmei,

(e) Kamung akhat lam piakna dinhmei.

(a) Puatc akhat lam piakna dinhmei:

Puatc akhat lam dinc pwkhou, mi puat tei tabui cho, tabui rui kasiamh tuang cho twmei thay nthan nina e. Puatc tei tabui ge nai, kataanv kathouc khatnic sinswpui lwan dinc nina e. Mi puat zamh siimei gaymei tei nic dinclou khang nai e.

(b) Maansei akhat lam piakna dinhmei:

Kagunc kagac, kachav, kathouc, kalwn kaliak, pwanrai khatnic kheyliak dinc nina e.

(c) Kabamv akhat lam piakna dinhmei:

Mi hei nsihsingmei bamv, kaanv, lwanry, howgaymei, gaengmei khatnic kathukh naimei lam tei dinc nina e.

(d) Kalwan akhat lam piakna dinhmei:

Akumh sw cho, kahouhmei, kachungmei khatnic luaimei lwn thayna dinc nina e. Maansei baansiam hamhethei kalwnlung tuang swmei lwan nic bam nuh e. Kalangv thayna hy khang e.

(e) Kamung akhat lam piakna dinhmei:

Mi hei kazaat kanei patna thay khang nai e. Mi kiu,

(i) Aniw rui raenghmei- ngaymei, talic palupmei mung - mi kumhmei.

(ii) Aniw khou patmei- bowmei, kabiu kacheimei, gari accident swmei - mi kumhmei mung.

Kabangc khou tiiloumei hei pacna kathai kho:

20.1.0 PUATC AKHAT LAM PIAKNA DINHMEI

(a) Nrahbungc (Guitar)

Guitar hei kariang naimei nrahbungc akhat re. Mihei thing khatnic thingkhuk rui kasiamh tuang e. Kabaancpwam hei inche 2 dou paek ge, kabung hei foot 1 dou paek ge. Kabaancpwam khou kasing baicbaicna ntanhpaek laulauna naplou e. Mitei rui kakhwan tibaicbaicpat ngam khang e. Kabung khourui kapy nganv ntanh riang kasing baicbaicna hynglou e. Ti-mbuaih ti-tanh nuh khangrui kapy thangc 'string heads' lou e. Kakhwan nchumhmei laanhmei nic mihei rui kasiamh nuh e. Kabaancpwam tei mbai baanc rui sin khatnic nzat baanczung hamhethei 'plectrum' sin lana kakhwan geypat re. Mitihei guitar, nrahbungc twna kaw e. Lu suan pwkhou kaniam tigay khang, nuhgaymei khwan pat khang piumei bungc e. Guitar hei neihkey biak kandic thangc geicna sinsw e tihkic ntaw tho kabamv kathuih how the. Electric guitar nic kazaat geicna pat the.

(b) Latrik

Latrik hei nyngtyng lu-lat, chamv, ramhkhat lam hyloumei buk ge. Mi khourui pac lana gaanvkhat khang dinc kadai datpui tuang e. Mihei chepaek khou muk rui hylou tuang e. Nthyammei daihmei nai e. Alauc guay khang kasiampatmei lev ganthauh khang kasiamhmei latrik baic e. Gaymei latrik khou ISBN (International Standard Book Number) nai e. Kasap, kalangv khaklangc chuyna khaklangcpatlou e. Latrik khourui kathaina nyngtyng laalou bam tuang e. Kumecho tihkic mihei aniw khang gaengmei gaeng makmei nic nai muay e. Nthukmei swna daicthau bammei chabwan guay rui akumhmei latrik pac nina cho twmei khaklangc thay nina e. Panty kasiamh nuhmei latrik azuh nai e; mitei kumc raphna panty, kheyliak sw kasiclou nimei latrik azuh nic nai e. Howmei kaguay ta pahmei hamhna aniw khang gaeng nimei latrik lwn thayna pac nina e.

20.2.0 MAANSEI AKHAT LAM PIAKNA DINHMEI

(a) Ai kahaw mak liangmei mei

Ai kahaw mak liangmei maansei tho akai kaigeimeipu e. 'Nang kai kaigei kainingmei ta nzian o' saa e tihkic akhang tho kungc sih e. Bwanguppou tho meic sii hak ge. Kapumc saengdai e, kapwanrai taniapc tiaphtiap be, kasam saengc e, zaucgay e khatnic kamwanghiw thunghthung e. Kamei tingmik pum zouh mbaa guangna kanow kanac ta bai tanhtan e. Kaudu kaudaengmei khwan, mu-lai kalaengv ganhmei khwan khatnic kapmei khwan zingbangc pum chu e. Mi kumhmei raaring rui kaigeimei zipbammei ta sw katuakc thangcthangc e. Neihkhat sihnic latgay saa bammei chu mak ge. Kanow kanac nic kungc changh kungcna kadaeng khou lungc e. Kanac gaanv charukmei amaan ngam kan ni the. Ai latrik pahpui ganv kathuih Bwanguppou kai rui ata ti-katuakc thangc zingc e. Mi pu tihei ai karaeng changh e.

(b) Gaymei Dinhmei

Dinhmei Chamthaypou latrik heihmei akhat re. Kamei pwanrai piu chuy e. Kakheyliak gay e. Kamei nrymmei thiulaa nu tanc e. School kaganv chaana guang e. Nchamnac guay lung tithau thay e. Dinhmei taanvbamv hei kamei tho kapanty khou lunghgut liangmei bamv sw e. Kaphybamv phuna syan khangna taanhmei dinhmeipu hamh e. Guang nimei zaat zamh tiangdaic kasiamhmei khou kalunggutmeipu e.Nchamnac guay lung thaylou e, nzianna kadanlou e. Kata nchamnca nunc lwm e. Kamei saamei guay tei nchamnac nunc lunghgutna nking e. Philosopher, chaengzaymei, nzianmei pam khatnic pu akhat lwn laana nchamnac guay ta kadan thay e. Kakhourui howpat re twmei thu kamei hei kapanty nzav makna nchamnac guay khang katpatloumeipu e.

20.3.0 KABAMV AKHAT LAM PIAKNA DINHMEI

(a) Ravzauhkai (Hospital)

Pucsang hei nnaumei ta ravzauhmei kai e. Mi bamv khouhei nnaumei daeng doctor lev nurse guay rui taek makna bam e.Mi bamv hei kalangv geicna 'ward' twna khaklangcpatlou e. Nnaumei thiak theilayna 'ward' baihbaih khou lou e. Casualty Ward khou accident ariumei, mi kumhmei guay, kadyng kadyng khou ravzauckey mak nuh makmei guay ta zauc e. Gynae lev Obstetric Ward khou meicpui nah bamlou nimei guay ta lou e. Surgical Ward khou operation sw khang kage naimei nunc ta zauc e, kabiu kacheimei nunc ta nic zauc e. Mi ward

khou tatgutlou ethei phaybaanh, zaw, py, guang- mi kumhmei guay khou bandage duamloumei how e. OPD khou nchiw maihmei mpaeng bam lana zauc nuhmei nnaumei nunc guay ta zauc e. Ravzauhkai khou kage naimei X-ray, E.C.G., aperture, oxygen nai e khatnic baihmei baansin azuh nai e. Ravzauhkai hei maansei khang lwmgaymei, diwgaymei tiiloumei bamv akhat re.

(b) Zoo

Zoo hei akai khourui duc hak mak ge. Apu lev aney neihkhatnungc tei zoo zauctat re. Zoo raenggaan tat twan gut raph pwkhou duiruay kazaat azuh ta how e. Aphwm, aluakc khatnic baihmei dui khou bammei khouringc guay duibuk daeng bam nkuay bam e. Dowdav, gahthwna khatnic karing howgaymei nruay zaat azuh kakuanc khou lou bammei ta nic how e. Ramvsu ramvzou peyna lou bam e. Asanh, chakhaengv, kamang, zouc, apaengh mi kumhmei guay ta nic how e. Meic guangmei kathuih ta zauc lana kaniw huc nty bam e. Ata how raph lana zouc guay tei kaniw kai lungc thangc rui pakthauna rah ndythau e. Ai tu bammei tupuat asaekc tiilou pwki kazap nkhiam bam e. Nthaanh, nrui guay nic how e. Meic ping khang nai e. Miguay ta howlouna maanseina rui tabui khang khouringh ta nymlou bam tu cho twmei alung khou latthanv akhat guang e.

20.4.0 KALWAN AKHAT PIAKNA DINHMEI

(a) Pheybaan soumei

Pheybaan soumei hei kunghmei taanv hamh e tihkic sou nthan khang kalwan tho nchumna sou nina e. Detergent powder patpui tangv pwanrai soumei hei nchiw the. Dui khou mi powder hei lou lana sou nimei pheybaan tei ntinlou rey the. Matat khat bam lana mphuammei pheybaan tei liangc liangc laathauna kanunh the. Mphuammei tei tat kan ethei kanunh luaimei pheybaan tei kalangv lou baiclou the. Mitei luai lana dui nthanmei khou pheybaan guay tei detergent powder sw nthanpat khang kathav the. Karai phui lana neih khou phaucphui khang phauclou the. Ntaw ganv khou tho washing machine azuh nic nai guang the. Phey soupui lwan nic baicbaicna sou the.

(b) School tat khang chamdaanvmei

Neihneic khou hamhna tingmik pum school tat khangrui lauthuan kathuih ai ntyn hak ge. Taanc nimei kalam geicna nai e. Lauthuan khuangh 5:00 zaeng

khou zipthau the. Zawphi, phaybaanh khiuna khuangh 5:20 keypui ganv khou atuang homework zingbangc taancluailou makmei asaekc taanc the. Taancluaina pac nuhmei asaekc nic pac dat the. Pac luaina uniform chamdaanv the. Duilowna nap tu the. Tusii tugay apui rui kasiamhloumei tei tu lana pwan piu the. Aseic ncham nimei latrik guay tei ntanghmei ntangh makmei zauc katamv dat re. Kai khou bammei guay khou kadylouna school tangh khang tat the.

20.5.0 RAMH MUNG AKHAT LAM PIAKNA DINHMEI

(a) Now suanhmei mung

Thau kanmei Nggaanhbw bwzaeng 19 Kachaekneic nungc achailuc ta suanc khwan e. Lauthuan khuangh 9:30 keypui ganv khou dinclou kanmei gin guay guang tangc the. Nowsuanh kaeng bailou tina meic guayna nowsuanh bamv khou gut ngam the. Lu suan kanak bampui tangv nowpouc ta kapui kapu rui nduanghgut the. Kaluan swna nowpeic achailuc ta nic apui lev apu, akai riang-ruaic guay rui nduanghgut the. Nuhgaymei lukhwan rui nowpouc lev nowpeic ta thuancriulou khwan e. Howgaymei nowpeic ta howlouna guang bammei guay mikbamv kalaih makna zauc bam geic e. Mi dyng khoutei nowsuanhpouc rui kamei taanc nimei dwan guay tei nthuihna taanclou the. Luaipat pwkhou nowpouc kai mei guay rui nowpeic ta riulou the. Maniampuymei mung e nowsuanh mung hei! How gay e, meic guay rui champouhlou e.

(b) Puanhmei Mung Ngngaymei (Birthday Celebration)

Puanh ngai ngngaymei hei maansei akhat khang machuhnna ningmei tingmik akhat re. Mi tingmik nungc hei puanclou khouteirui aseic nganv dwangay guangmei ta ningtow kaluaih datna Ravguangc ta thuanckumei tingmik sw e. Ata Matuicbw zaeng 9 nungc puanc khwan e. Tingkwm 15/16 tat kan the. Mi tingmik tatei ningtow datmei swna ata puanhmei mung khang chamhdaanv the. Mi nungc hei apui apu rui akhang 'Birthday Cake' gaymei akhat kasiamhna phungcguang pw e. Kailuangc gaanvsuh gaanvthauh asaekc, nzianmei apam aryanmei ta kawlou tina kaniw nic neihlaana guang e. Akailangv karing gaymei electric bulb daancna karuhlou e. Atuang Laptop khourui niamhgaymei lu mpat nzaeng rihriina ngayruanhmei guay ta riulou the. Guangloumei kaguay rui neihlaamei kaipat, tupuat phungcguang pw e. Khuailu daancloumei table khou Birthday Cake daeng khoutei meic guayna guangdungc kaduai the. Khuailu mai tei ai muanmitlouna

cake tei ruamcna nzanhpat the. Meic guay rui "Happy Birthday To You" twna bwanlou khwan e. Kunghpui tingmik ge, maniampuymei tingmik ge Puanh Ngai hei!

KATHAIDWAN

Kabangc khou tiiloumei lam guay khat khat swna piakna latkaeng 100-120 dou khou daw o.

(a)	Mobile Phone	(b)	Kai
(c)	Mwnpwang	(d)	Bible
(e)	Namvpouc	(f)	Pastor
(g)	Postman	(h)	Maansei
(i)	Exam Hall	(j)	Kaithyan
(k)	Ravkai	(l)	Duikhunc
(m)	Napgan suanghmei	(n)	SMS mpatmei
(o)	Ball talicmei mung	(p)	Nggaanh Ngai

21.0 TATDYN HYMEI

(Letter Writing)

Tatdyn hymei twmei hei nsihsingna mi khang na rui e twmei maek ge. Latrik thaymei maansei akhat rui kapanty khou kaenglam (purpose) azuh khang hy bam pwni. Tatdyn hymei hei thyam thiammei (art) akhat de. Khithkhitna chadaa bam nina e. Nang rui hymei tatdyn khoutei nang thow cho twmei dinc bam tuang di the. Tatdyn hei kazaat kathumh khang khaklangcpat nuh e.

21.1.0 Charay Tatdyn - *pam hamhethei riangruaih khang hymei tatdyn e.*

21.2.0 Taanvdui Lwan Tatdyn - *Editor khang hamhethei taanv, pŭatc tiilou khang meicsaengc meicdaihmei nunc khou huayna hymei tatdyn e.*

21.3.0 Charuangc Tatdyn- *Kamung karuang khang gin dinhmei tatdyn mi kumhmei ta e.*

Karuc khou tiilou bammei hei Formal khatnic Informal twmei khang saa baicpat dat nuh e. Formal twmei hei lanvguanh lanvdaenghmei khou gutmei tatdyn, taanvdui lwan tatdyn khatnic Charuangc tatdyn ta e. Informal twmei rui charay tatdyn ta e.

Tatdyn hymei hei nchiw de ning nuh e tihkic nchumhmei riak khou hy khang kabangc khou tiiloumei *Conventions/Forms* guay hei thay rey nina e.

(a) Hymei bampui bamv zanc (*The address of the sender*)
(b) Bwzaeng (*Date*)
(c) Thuancriu lat (*The Salutation or greeting*)
(d) Tatdyn pumc (*The Body of the Letter*)
(e) Karyang lat (*The Subscription or Complimentary close*)
(f) Zanh suaic swmei (*The Signature*)

Karuc khou saa bammei guay hei khatkhat swna piakna kathai kho.

21.1.0 CHARAY TATDYN

(a) Hymei bampui bamv zanc (*The address of the Sender*)

Mihei chepaek zamh nzat biak tho hy khang e. Karian nganvloumei twn *comma* (,) hylou raphrap be. Kabamv zanc hyluai pwkhou rowding (fullstop) hylou khang e.

[***Thaylou khang:*** Saa bammei thiak khourui ntaw ganv hei kalaihmei nai e. Hymei bampui bamv zanc tei mbai biak nic hy nuh e. Comma lev fullstop hei hylou mak nic nuh e. Kabamv zanc khou lat matat hiak (punctuation mark) hylou ethei Convention kaguayna khou nchamc raphna hylou nina e. Lou mak gethei tatdyn pumc khou na hamhna baihmei guay khou nic hylou lak nina e.]

Kabamv zanc hypui thiak:

Thyanzaengc,
Loktak Project,
Manipur, 795124.

hamhethei

Thyanzaengc
Loktak Project
Manipur, 795124

Comma hylou makmei bamv zanc ramhi khou sihnic karian akhat khou kalam kanei ethei nchung khoutei comma hylou nina e.

(b) Bwzaeng (*The Date*)

Bwzaeng hei kabamv zanc bangc khou hylou khang e. Kandih baihbaihmei rui hymei thiak nic baicbaicna hy e.

Thyanzaengc,
Loktak Project,
Manipur, 795124.

Chagacbw 6, 2014.

hamhethei

Thyanzaengc
Loktak Project
Manipur, 795124

06 Chagacbw 2014

Baihmei ramhi thiak:

(i) 6/1/2014 (ii) 6.1.'14
(iii) 1/6/2014 (iv) 1.6.'14

Aniw kandic India khou tho (i) lev (ii) hei Chagacbw bwzaeng charuk 2014 tw tuang e. Tihkic mihei US khang tho Twnngaibw bwzaeng neihkhat 2014 tw tuang e. US mei tho bw sing hy rey e, bwzaeng nchung khou hy e. Tingkwm tho meic guayna hy nkhamh the. Kumhpui zaengrui kasuak kaguakmei maek khang karuc thangc tiiloumei reymei (twmei thu *Chagacbw 6, 2014.* khatnic *06 Chagacbw 2014*) thiak tei hymei gay liang e.

(c) Thuancriu Lat (*The Salutation or greeting*)

Mihei chepaek zamh mbai biak, bwzaeng bangc khou hy khang e. Nang pammei khang hy ethei nangney kaw bammei zanc tei hy o.

Latkamv: 'Zianmei Gaychuy' hamhethei 'Zianmei Lulu' twna hy o.

['Ai nzianmei Gaychuylung, Ai nzian dianghmei Kazikgaylu' twna hy rio.] Punctuation mark tho karuc thangc kabamv zanc hymei thei tei lay the.

(d) Tatdyn Pumc (*The Body of the Letter*)

Mi hei rui tatdyn hymei khou nthuk liangmei e. Nang rui saa nii bammei tei chiwmei latrian khatnic latkaeng khou hy khang e.

Tatdyn tei luaikey pwkhou kwnmei, thuanckumei, nreyloumei, guigay kadymei latsav asaekc duina hylou nuh e.

(e) Karyangmei Lat (Subscription/Complimentary close)

Karuc thangc saa kanmei hypui mei bamv zanc tei nzat biak hylou ethei mihei nic nzat biak hy khang e. Kabamv zanc tei mbai biak hylou ethei mihei nic mbai biak hy khang e. Kabangc khou tiiloumei kumcna hy nuh e.

'Nang lwmnuhmei', 'Nang rui lwmlou nuhmei', 'Nang Nzianmei',

Thaylou khang:

i) *Hy reymei latkaeng bangbi hiak tei daihmei hiak (capital letter) nina e. Mi tangv guangmei latkaeng guay tei tho nthyammei hiak (small letter) nina e.*

ii) *Kabamv zanc khoutei comma lou ethei mi khou nic lou tho, lou mak gethei mi khou nic lou ri tho.*]

(f) Zanh suaic swmei (*The Signature*)

Charay tatdyn khou tho nang zanc saenghmei hy khang kage maek ge. Nang pammei guay rui kaw bammei zanc tei hy nuh de. Suaic tangv tho fullstop hy dat lak nina e.

Latkamv: Nyngtynglung (Nchumhmei ramhi)

Ningtynglung. (Nlaanhmei ramhi, fullstop hy khang kage maek ge.)

Envelope khou kabamv zanc hymei:

Nang rui hy bammeipui/pu bammei bamv zanc envelope khou hypui thiak tatdyn luailoumei bangc khou hy khang e. 'Pouh', 'Luh' twmei latkaeng sinswna envelope khou hy nina e.

Hypui thiak:

English	*Ruanglat*
To	Khou
Mr. K. Ravthaypou	Pouh K. Ravthaypou
Luangmai III	Luangmai III
Tamenglong District	Tamenglong District

[***Thaylou khang:*** Ntaw ganv khou tho Charay Tatdyn suangc taanvdui tatdyn rui sinsw mbu timei rui kathiak nic baic guang the. Tatdyn hymei convention guay tei comma, fullstop piu dat makna mbai biak thangc nsyn hynah the. Mi thiak tihei English rui **Full-Block Style** twna thay e. Mi thiak hei exam khou nic hy nuh de. Kathiak kiu;

(Hymei bammei bamv zanc)

Bwzaeng

Thuanriu Latsav

Tatdyn Pumc

Body of the letter

Karyangmei Lat

Zanh Suaic Swmei

21.1.1 Hylou bammei tatdyn guay hei pacna zauc kho:

A. Kalaluangc, Bishenpur namv khou lunghmei Pouhguigay Thaimei the twna nang ning tho. Mirthful Cottage, Shillong khou bammei nang pammei Pouh Kabidym Gwanmei khou chariak kwmganv guangmei lwnlung tuang howgaymei tei hyna tithay o.

Kalaluangc
Bishnupur
Manipur, 795126
Ginhkihbw 2, 2014

Zianmei Adym

Tingkwm kaganv hei thaymak liangna chariak kwmganv guang dat the. Shillong thangc nic ting riukeyna dui ryanraamei tei nai khwan lak khe cho? Nang ta ai Airport khou suanclou kanpui tangv nang chamv nic chutow dat mak khe.

Manipur khou nic Ginhkibw guang datmei rui ting riu chunhchunhna riu e. Tingsei kwmganv rui ramh kaguay tikangc phuithiw bammei tei ntaw tho ramh kapwmna kasai kabwan gayna thaupat dat ngam the. Shillong thangc kumc changh mak sihnic howgaymei mwn kazaat azuh puangcpat the. Nngouh guay how ndiak rihri the. Taanv ryanraana dui tariimeipu rui nchu gaymei dui zangvlouna kachaengc ringc dat kanmei kumc mwnbang, thingbang, mpeih bang kaguay nic kachaengc ringc rihripat dat ngam the. Howgay e, meiclung mphaengv e! Maansei aniw panty nic gaymei taanv taanh khangrui lungning kazik kasatpat mbukumei sw diu o.

Akainac Lanvguichungc lev Neihlaaliu ta dwangay kadylouna pw o.

Thuancku the.

Nang pammei

Pougui

Khou

Pouh Kabidym Gwanmei
Mirthful Cottage
Shillong-3

B. Delhi Public School khou ncham bammei Howreylu Paammei the twna nang ning tho. Gaydymzaengc, Khoupum khou lungc bammei nang pu Chwngaylung Paammei khou nang tuang school nac nunc Goa tho excursion tatmei mung khou kazauh nii e twna tatdyn akhat hy o.

Delhi Public School
North Delhi-3
Ginkihbw 6, 2014

Nzianmei Apu

Neihkhat nungc nang rui tiigutmei tatdyn tei kaganv chaana mphang the. Apui rui mpuatcgutmei pheyzai tei nic mphang the. Ai gayna latrik ncham bam de. Delhi khou chaengc hak thau dat the.

Kalam nthukna aseic kaikhunh khou huay niimei nai e. Aniu school zamh nchamnac asaekc ta kapahlouna Twnngaibw 20-28 nganv Goa thangc excursion tat khang chamvraeng bam e. Mi khoutei tat khang azanc hykulou bam e. Goa kiu ai nic tat tangcna zauclou nii e. Aniu tuang dinhmei gaanv padeih rui nduangh tat khang e. Mi mung khou kiu tat nuh khang ryanraa sihnic kaikhunhmei rui syandui kaphianhlou pw o. Rau nganv khang daengkaa 10,000/- (Ching ruh) na tho zianlouna tiigutlou pw o.

Ai kaikhunhmei zaw tisiilou ni tu hamh e. Nuhpui kamv karamcna aseic kwm tho rey liangmei thaek khou guang khang exam ganv khou nic karamc pwni de. Akhang huayney nkhavlou tanhtan bam pw o. Nganvlou the.

Apui lev akainac Bungbung khou atuang guigay lat kadyguang e, saalou pw o.

Thuancku the.

Nang nzian dianghmei

Howreylu

Khou
Pouh Chwngaylungc Paammei
Gaydymzaengc, Khoupum
Tamenglong District, Manipur-795103

KATHAIDWAN

1. Luangmai 3 khou lunghmei Gayliang Kaamhmei rui NEHU, Shillong khou latrik ncham bammei Nyngtynggaylu khang exam dwangay kadypui tatdyn hy e. Mi tatdyn kiu akumh pwni cho makumhna hypat ro.
2. Dihlanvpou ta kapammei rui Birthday Party khang kawtowlou e. Kamei tat ngam lak khe twmei lam kapammei Suaihiamlungc khang tatdyn hy e. Mi tatdyn kiu hypat ro.
3. Nang kainac Delhi tho College kutat kanmei khang latrik pac chuyna swriak thayna bam khang kadymei tatdyn akhat hy o.
4. Lungcthaurey pui maek kan the. Kapammei Naihaypou rui Lungcthaurey ta swmloupui tatdyn akhat hy e. Mi tatdyn kiu hypat ro.

21.2.0 LANVGUANH TATDYN

(Business/Official Letters)

Latpuanh Tatdyn, zaenghuaymei tatdyn, puatc order swmei tatdyn khatnic dawmei tatdyn.

Charay tatdyn khouteirui mi tatdyn hypui thiak baic maih e. Kazaat nic geic pwni. Business hamhethei Official Letters hy pwkhou kabangc khou tiiloumei Conventions guay hei thay rey nina e.

(a) Hymei bamv zanc (*Sender's Address*):

Mihei charay tatdyn hymei thiak tei lev nchamc raph de. Tihkic tatdyn luai pwkhou hy nic nuh e.

(b) Bwzaeng (*Date*):

Charay tatdyn khou hymei thiak lev nchamcna hy nuh de tihkic tatdyn luai pwkhou zanh suaic swloumei bangc khou nic hy nuh e.

(c) Kalungc khou hymei bamv zanc (*The inside address*):

Mihei aniw rui hy bammei mei bamv zanc ta e. Mi bamv zanc hy pwkhou 'Khou' (To) twmei latkeang rui kahouh e. Tihkic ntaw ganv khou 'Khou' (To) hei hy mak nic nuh the.

(d) Latbamv hamhethei Kalam (*Subject*):

Mihei tatdyn pumc khou hyloumei *idea* tei latrian akhat kanei khou lyanloumei ta e.

(e) Thuancriu lat (*The salutation*):

Charay tatdyn khoutei hymei kumhmakna mi tatdyn khou tho English rui 'Sir' hamhethei 'Madam', 'Respected Sir', 'Respected Madam' twmei tei aniw tho 'Champouhmei', 'Chakhwang swmei' twmei latkaeng guay rui lyn nuh e.

(f) Tatdyn Latdwn (*The body of the letter*):

Latgwan hei chakhuang champouh lat nina e. Charay tatdyn lat tei kumh makna mikhou tho lat gaymei, paclou pwkhou charuangc rui kwmlou nuhpui lat hy nina e.

(g) Karyangmei Lat (*Complimentary close*):

Charay tatdyn hypui thiak tei lev nchamc de.

21.2.1 Kabangc khou tatdyn guay hei zauc lana kathai kho:

A. Tiangkuanzaengc, Luangmai khou lunghmei Kadwnbi Paammei rui Head Post Office, Imphal khou bammei Post Master khou Postman taanv taanc chuy makmei lam latpuanckuna tatdyn hy e. Mi tatdyn kiu hy kaluaih pat ro.

Tiangkuanzaengc
Luangmai, 795159

Ginkihbw 4, 2014

Khou
Post Master
Imphal Head Post Office
Imphal - 795001

Kalam :- *Postman taanv taanc chuy makmei lam.*

Champouhmei

Chakhuang rui chaeng huna kapouc katiangc swbammei Post Master bamv khou mi latbamv hei latpuanckulou e. Kalam thu Gaypuilanv, Luangmai post office khou Postman sw bammei hei kathouc kadwan khou lunghgutna taanh mak khe. Tatdyn guay kaganv chaana nzanhpat mak ge, kai kai khou tatdyn suancguang mak ge. Tatdyn guay chaengluang khou tatbammei alauc nunc khou nsinzin nsinzaalou e. Nthukmei tatdyn asaekc laancpatlouna tiiguang e. Company khourui nsaa tiiguangmei catalogue, journal, magazine tii kadat kadaengloumei katup guang the. Zaeng charuk chanei hu thangc post office khou guangtangc kanmei tatdyn aseicna suancguang e. Tatkanmei bw khou Delhi khourui akhang mpuatcloumei tatdyn aseic nganv suancguanglou makna kaganv swriilou the. Ai kata ariuna tatdyn guay kaganv chaana nzanhpat khang zaenghuayna saa liang kanei kathumh kan e, tihkic lunghgutna nkinglou mak ge, kalaihmei nic maek ge.

Kumhpui zaengrui nzianlouna taanvpy swbammei nang rui kata kathouc thayna taanc chuyna taanh khang latdanv khat patlou khang zaenghuay e. Karith laalouna nang rui taanclou pwnimei khang ta lwmgayna thuancku e.

Nang rui lwmlou nuhmei

Kadwnbi Paammei

B. Chief Medical Officer, Tamenglong khou malaria ravpuat Tamenglong District khou geicthau bammei ta thingclou khang tatdyn akhat hy o. Nang zanc Neihlaabi twna hylou o.

Khou

Chief Medical Officer,
Tamenglong District,
Manipur - 765141.

Kalam: *Malaria ravpuat thingclou khang huaymei.*

Champouhmei,

Puiruhnac rui thay e twmei tho Tamenglong khouhei nngouh rui padik ge. Mpeihbang nic geic e. Kaithyan bamvbamv khou nic mphuamphaamei ganclou geic the. Mihei rui kalam swna chakhaeng nac peyna kakpatna maansei panty khou suhmei nuhmei tipat bam e. Chakhaeng nkaymei khourui guangmei malaria nnauna meic peyna ravmanc bammei hei nic chamvche azuh khou how the. Dihnac guay khou, kadai swna ryanraa thuymanv makmei nunc khou mi kumhmei patbammei hei kungc sih the.

Heic zaengrui malaria ravpuat ta thingc nuhmei taanv katumcna kabamv kabamv khou sinthaulou khang champouhmei nang ta khou huaypui tuang e.

Thuancku the.

Nang rui lwmnuhmei,

(Neihlaabi)
Khowpyluangc, Tamenglong
Twnngaibw 21, 2014

Thaylou khang:
Zanh bracket lungc khou hylou ethei karuc khou aniu suaic sw nina e.

C. Tamenglong Hr. Sec. School tuang Sports Secretary akhat swna talicpuat asaekc Guwahati zamh dukaan akhat khou order swmei tatdyn akhat hy o. Nang zanc Pantyzai twna hy o.

Tamenglong Hr. Secondary School
Tamenglong Hd. Qtr.
Manipur

Ginhkihbw 6, 2014

M/S Gupta Singh & Sons
Sports Goods Suppliers
Pan Bazar, Guwahati

Kalam: *Talicpuat thaalou khang huaymei*

Champouhmei

Nang tuang tatdyn Baanraubw 30, 2014 khou talicpuat Order sw niimei guay khou order sw nuh the twna saa guangmei thei tei layna aniu school rui nang tuang puat order sw khang nuhlou the. Kabangc khou tiiloumei puat, kasiamhmei khatnic kasing guay tei phay khou chuih tahlouna mpuatc guanglou khang huay e.

	Puatc	**Kasiamhmei**	**Kasing**
1.	Football	Adidas	10
2.	Tennis ball	Hudson	15
3.	Volley ball	Hudson	15
4.	Cricket bat	DQ (Eng Willow)	15
5.	Cricket ball	Hawk	10
6.	Tennis board	Q Tech	02

Puatc guay hei duamthau mak khou siimei gaymei zauc nthanlou o. Suaimei khatnic gay makmei puat guay tei tho tiihanguang dat pwni. Mi khangtei aniu karith laa ngam lak ge. Puatc guay tei zaeng 15 lungc khou tiiguangtangh khang swlou pw o. Cheque nwang daengka 10000/- (ching ruh) hei nic tatdyn lev advance swna mpuatc kazauhlou e.

Cash Memo lev Receipt tiiguang kazauhlou pw o.

Thuancku the.

Dwan gay o.

Lwm nuhmei nang pam

(Pantyzai)
Sports Secretary

[***Thaylou khang:*** Mi kumhmei tatdyn hei tho office akhat tuang swpui zaengrui Letter Head thiak khou nic kasiamhna hy nuh e. Letter Head thiak khou hy ethei karuc khou kabamv zanc tei hy mak nuh e. Kazaeng thu Letter Head khoutei address kazauh the.]

KATHAIDWAN

1. Chief Engineer, Electricity Department khou nang ramc khou mai guang chuy makpui zaeng latpuanh tatdyn akhat hy o. Nang zanc Thaytanghlungc twna hylou o.
2. MBBS Entrance exam thah khang Health Mission, Manipur zamh Director rui notice tiipat the. Tihkic nsunhsah tho tithaylou mak khwan e. Kalam nsuhsah tei kakhina Director khou tatdyn akhat hy o.
3. BRO tuang Chief Engineer khou Saengrungc-Tamenglong chaeng katumcna taancluailou khang zaenghuaymei tatdyn akhat hy o.
4. Khangsinlung Hr. Sec. School Students' Union, Khoupum tuang General Secretary rui Akansha Book Publishers, New Delhi khou latrik asaekc School Library khou lou khang order sw e. Mi tatdyn kiu latrik zanc, hymei, kasing kaguayna kazauhna hypat ro.
5. Nang Kabigay Kaamhmei, Luangba Youth Club Secretary the ning tho. Zeliangrong Football Association, Imphal rui nang khou Zahduanang Trophy, Imphal khou kazauhlou khang tatdyn akhat hy guang e. Mi trophy khoutei kazauh ngam lak khe twmei kalam saana tatdyn akhat hy o.

6. Nang tuang Class X Admit Card, Board of Secondary Education, Manipur rui tiimei tei amaan kan the. Duplicate Admit Card akhat tiilou dat khang Board of Secondary Education, Manipur tuang Secretary khou zaenghuay tatdyn akhat hy o.

21.3.0 CHAMVCHE ZAMH EDITOR KHOU HYMEI TATDYN (Letters to Editors)

Chamvche kaguayna khou 'Letters to Editor' column nai e. Editor rui mi column khou dihnac rui hyguangmei kandihmei khang kage swmei, katuang katuang chwn ndauh niina hyguangmei tei hypat tuang e. Mi kumhmei tatdyn paan khourui Democratic State tuang siimei gaymei tei howpat tuang e. Kandih tuang kapouc katiangc guay nic kandihmei chwn mi khourui howpat ngam e.

Mi tatdyn hypui thiak hei kabangc khou tiilou e.

(a) Hymei bamv zanc lev bwzaeng (*Sender's address and date*): Mihei tatdyn baihmei guay lev nchamc the.

(b) Editor khou na hy nina e.

(c) Kalam hamhethei Latbamv (*Subject*) tiilou nuh e, tiilou mak nic nuh e.

(d) Thuancriu lat (*Salutation*):

Mihei English khou tho 'Sir' hamhethei 'Dear Sir' twna hy e. Aniw nic 'Champouhmei', 'Chakhwang swmei'- mi kumhmei latkaeng hy nuh e.

(e) Tatdyn Latdwn (*Body of the Letter*):

Chakhwang lat rui hy nina e. Tithay niimei tei duina nthan thiakhthiakna hypat nina e. Latzaamv zayna hy khang mi tatdyn khou kabamv maek ge.

(f) Karyangmei Lat (*The Complimentary close*):

'Nang rui lwm nuhmei', 'Nang tuang kalingmei'- mi kumhmei latkaeng rui luailou nuh e.

21.3.1 Kabangc khou hyloumei tatdyn guay hei zauc kho:

A. Tamenglong Kaidai khou electric guang mak katup langvna dihnac guay ryanraa the. Mi lam khou 'Dihchamv' tuang Editor khou tatdyn akhat hy o. Nang zanc Ningsumbut Gwanmei twna hylou o.

Daicluangc
Tamenglong
Manipur

Duiluanghbw 3, 2014

Khou
Editor,
DIH CHAMV,
Tamenglong HQ., Manipur

Kalam: *Tamenglong khou mai guang makmei.*

Chakhwang swmei

Nang tuang DIH CHAMV khou Tamenglong District khou taanv swbammei Electricity Department tuang kapouc katiangc bamv khou Tamenglong khou mai guang makpui lam hy ndauhpatlou nii e. Ting, mpwan katitna sihnic guang ethei Tamenglong khou mai amit raphraph bammei hei kariak hamh the. Load shedding lwn nic thay dat mak khe. Mihei rui kalam swna Tamenglong kapwm hei zinghmei dic mbaih the.

Chief Engineer rui gay khang taanclou pwni the twna saa kanmei tei kalwn howpat zat mak ge. Mai, dui hei maanseina khang nthuk liangmei swpui zaengrui kathouc taanclou nimei guay ta kapouc guay rui dinclou nina e.

Thuancku the.

Nang tuang kalingmei

Ningsumbut Gwanmei

B. Daicthau bammei chabwan guay rui siisuai nimei khang ning makna bauruamna gari thoumei ta nuh nii makmei latpuanh tatdyn The Sangai Express, Imphal tuang Editor khou tatdyn hy o.

Tazeibut
Sichar, Assam

Matuicbw 27, 2014

Khou
Editor
The Sangai Express
Imphal

Chakhuang swmei

Tingkwm kanei kathumh lungc khouhei sii-suai pat nimei khang ta ning makna daicthau bammei chabwan guay rui bauruamna motor-bike thou khourui kabiu kacheimei khatnic theihmei sing hei taraina makna mbuku the. Miguay kiu Yamaha, Pulsar, Activa, Dio mi kumhmei motor-bike thoumei nunc e. Thou bammei na hamhna chaeng khou tat bammei guay khang nganvna ramhsic pat nuhmei tuang e. Kabiu kacheina theihmei ta zaucna bam khang hamh e, tihkic mi thiak tihei akumh ethei thingc nuh pwni cho twmei kaphianh khang kage nai e. Driving License hei tingkwm ntangh makmei alauc nunc khang tii lak nina e. Tiiloumei Speed Limit thou hianmei ta ranvmei guairaek tii nina e. Kariak twanna gari thoumei guay ruc khou laa nuhmei mat laa nina e. Mi guayna ruc khou 'enforcement authority' swbammei guay rui lungning nthanna nchumhmei taanv taanh khang kage nai e.

Nang rui lwmnuhmei

Kataapou Paanvmei

C. Football talic palupmei lwan khou India hei tabui zaengrui kandih baihmei guay suangc key bam tu cho twmei zakmei lam khatnic gaythau nuhmei thiak asaekc chamvche Editor khou tatdyn akhat hy o. Nang zanc 'Footballer' twna hylou o.

Kakhuluang,
Paona Bazar,
Imphal.

Baanchatbw 12, 2013

Khou
Editor,
The Times of India,
New Delhi.

Chakhuang swmei,

Indiamei nac guay hei kandih baihmei hu khou peyna zakna lungc the. Tabui cho tihkic meic heiczu naimei kandic khou Football World Cup khou talic nuhmei gaanv chuihna kanei na 00000kapahpat ngam mak ge. Chanui swna thowkumhmei rui saa bammei nai e twmei tho maansei riklungh kumc bammei India mei hei Zero lev nchamc di he twna. India hei Football lam khou saa pwkhou kandih baihmei guay rui nuicloupui bamv sw the.

Kandihmei rui lwn thayna champouhlou nuhmei kandic akhat sw khang India hei talic palupmei laupuk hei tidaicthau khang nai the. Meicsing na geickumei rui champouhlou nuhmei guncgac hamh e.

Talic palupmei chamraengv phwam rui reymei khou lungning nthan nina e. Kapy guay corrupt sw lak nina e. Kaneimei khou talic palupmei hei polictics khourui duc bam nina e. Kathumhmei khou chabwan guay khang nchumhmei nyngtyng chamlouna talic palupmei laupuk khou katiuthaulou nina e. Mi na hamhna school lev college guay khou nic talic palupmei hei taangay makmei dam akhat tiswlou nina e. Mi kumc pwkhou na rui India hei kandih kapwmna lev ding adaa ngam khang de.

Nang tuang kalingmei,

Footballer

KATHAIDWAN

1. Nang lungc bammei town chaengluang khou mphuam mphaamei gancloumei ta laazihna, gay nimei thiak asaek saana chamvche editor khou tatdyn akhat hy o.
2. Ntaw daicthau bammei chabwan guay kheyliak hei mobile phone sin khourui kalam daihmei akhat swna siikey e. Akumh ethei daicthau bammei chabwan guay hei mobile phone tisin mak nuh pwni cho hamhethei mobile phone kathiak kalwan gaymei khou tisin ni cho twmei lam asaekc chamvche editor khou tatdyn akhat hy o.
3. Kaiphundai, Tamenglong District khou lunghmei Neyphanglungc Kaamhmei rui Chalian Chaengdai (National Highway) khou tat bammei gari guay khou thowkumhmei rui kalam maekna syan kakhaa bammei ta howna The Imphal Free Press, Imphal tuang Editor khou kachwn ndauhna tatdyn hy guang e. Mi tatdyn kiu nang makumhna hypat ro.
4. Namvnamv khou MGNREGS guanglou khourui lungcsii lungcsangmei guay khang tingkauh MANNA di the, tihkic mihei rui thowkumhmei khang tho siimei bangbi sw bam e twmei lam chamvche editor khou tatdyn akhat hy o. Nang zanc 'Dilungmei' twna hylou o.

21.4.0. TAANVDUI LWAN TATDYN
(Letters or application for Jobs)

Mi tatdyn hymei thiak-

(a) Hymei bamv zanc lev bwzaeng:

Charay tatdyn tei lev nchamc the.
hamhethei

Hymei bamv zanc karuc khou hy mak sihnic tatdyn pumc khou bio-data swna tii nuh e. Bwzaeng nic tatdyn luai pwkhou mbai biak hylou nuh e.

(b) Kalungc khou hymei bamv zanc:

Mihei aniw rui hy bammei bamv zanc tei e. 'Khou' (To) twmei latkaeng rui kahouh khang e. Mbai biak bwzaeng rian bangc khou hy khang e.

[***Thaylou khang:*** Ntaw ganv tatdyn khou tho 'Khou' (To) hei hynah mak khe. Hymei bamv zanc, bwzaeng khatnic karyangmei lat kaguay hei nic mbai biak raana hynah the.]

(c) Latlam/Latbamv:

Hy bammei duimei lam tei tithaylou nina e.

(d) Thuancriu lat :

Chakhuang lwn phunghmei, Champouhmei...

(e) Karyangmei lat:

Nang rui lwmlou nuhmei, Nang rui lwm nuhmei...

(f) Lou kazauhmei *(Enclosures):*

Tatdyn khou lou kazauhmei certificate, document guay hei nthanna panctowlou nina e.

Kabangc khou hylou bammei tatdyn guay hei pacna kathai kho.

A. Kabangc khou tiiloumei advertisement hei pac lana L.I.C. India office khou Clerk taanvbamv khang tatdyn akhat hy o.

TAANVBAMV NSAAMEI

[L.I.C., Imphal khou Clerk taanvbamv 20 nsaa bam e. Kahawmei guay rui katuang bio-data kazauhna zaeng 20 lungc khou Divisional Manager, LIC of India, Imphal Division khou tatdyn hyku nuh e.] *Tazei Chamv 6.6.2014.*

Divisional Manager
LIC of India, Imphal Division

Latlam: *Clerk taanvbamv khang huaymei.*

Champouhmei

Twnngaibw 6, 2014 nungc tuang 'Tazei Chamv' khou advertisement tiiloumei khou clerk taanvbamv khang kawmei khoutei ai nic LIC office, Imphal khou clerk taanv taanh khang machunhna mi tatdyn hyguang e. Mincna zauclou diu khang atuang duimei bio-data kabangc khou tiilou e.

Bio-data

Zanh	:	Gaychuypuiluc Kaamhmei
Pu zanc	:	Gaydymlung Kaamhmei
Pu taanv	:	Thing taanv taanhmei
Lunghbamv	:	Gaypuinamv, Luangmai, Tamenglong District, Manipur-795002
Tingkwm	:	25
Ntu nggaanv	:	Ntumei
Nowkaw mihmei	:	Micna nah akhat nai the.
Latrik Thaek (Academic Qualifications):		
HSLC	:	II Div., 2008 (BOSEM)
HSSLC	:	I Div., 2010 (COHSEM)
BA	:	II Div., Sociology (Hon) (NEHU)
Taancloumei	:	Zahduanang High School khou tingkwm 3 clerk swlou e.
Baibaihmei	:	College ku bampui douc NCC kazauhlou e. A Grade khou pass sw e.

Saa bammei taanvbamv khou taanh khang kadou chaamei ti-mphanglou pwethei lunghgutna taanc chuyna taanc ni e.

Lou kazauhmei:

i) Certificate 5
ii) Mark Sheet 3
iii) Passport photo 4
iv) Kariang naimei che guay

Nang lwmnuhmei

(Gaychuypuiluc Kaamhmei)

Thaylou khang: Bracket lungc khou hyloumei zanh ruc khouhei suaic swlou nina e.

B. Education tuang Director khou Assistant Graduate Teacher taanv laalou khang tatdyn akhat hy o.

Khou
Director of Education
Government of Manipur

Latbamv: *Assistant Graduate Teacher taanv laalou khang zaenghuaymei.*

Champouhmei

School asaekc khou Assistant Graduate Teacher taanv laa pwnimei chamv chu e. Mi khang tei ai nic candidate akhat sw niina tatdyn hyguang e.

Dinhmei taanv hei chakuy chaluymei taanv e. Mi khou alunggut re. Tabui kumhmei kadou chaamei tiilou ethei alung kapwm rui nchamnac kasiamhmei taanv hei taanc ni e.

Atuang bio-data khatnic kage naimei che guay kabangc khou tiilou the.

Kabamv: Thyanzaengc namv
Bwzaeng: Ginkihbw 6, 2014

Nang tuang lwmnuhmei
Lanvbanglu

Bio-data

Zanh	:	Lanvbanglu Meiclyngmei
Pu zanc lev taanv	:	Pouhguangchungc M., Lautaanhmei
Lunghbamv	:	Thyanzaengc, Loktak Project-795124
Tingkwm	:	24
Puanhmei	:	Nahnubw 12, 1989
Ravchap	:	Christianity
Latrik Thaymei Thaek	:	
HSLC	:	I Div., 2000 (BOSEM)
HSSLC	:	I Div., 2002 (COHSEM)
BA	:	I Div., 2005, Eng (Hons) MU
MA	:	II Div., 2007, English, MU
Taancloumei	:	Tingkwm 5 Loyala Hr. Sec. School khou dinhmei swlou e.
Baibaihmei	:	N.S.S kazauhlou e. Certificate 3 nai e. Volley ball khatnic Athlete certificate 4 nai e. Kaswan nic geicna laalou e.

Lou kazauhloumei:

(i) HSLC certificate lev marksheet
(ii) HSSLC cerfiticate lev marksheet
(iii) BA certificate lev marksheet
(iv) MA certificate lev marksheet
(v) N.S.S tuang certificate 3
(vi) Talic palupmei certificate 4
(vii) Dinhmei swloumei certificate 1
Kaguayna : 16

KATHAIDWAN:

1. Indian Oil Company tuang Regional Manager, Imphal khou Caretaker taanvbamv tiilou khang zaenghuay tatdyn akhat hy o.
2. Tamenglong College, Tamenglong khou Computer Operator taanvbamv akhat khang tatdyn nang tuang bio-data kazauhna Director, Education khou hy o.
3. Zahduanang Memorial College, Luangmai tuang Principal khou College tuang Assistant Librarian taanv tiilou khang tatdyn akhat hy o.
4. Tamenglong tuang Deputy Commissioner (DC) khou Office Assistant taanvbamv tiilou khang tatdyn akhat hy o.

22.0 ESSAY HYMEI

Latkaeng zamh kabah ling saa pwethei Essay twmei hei 'karamhmei' twtuang e. Tihkic aniw rui mikhou kathai nimei tho ramh akhat lam khou piakna hypatmei ta e. Essay hei tiilou bammei latbamv lam khoutei kamei kamei rui ningmei chwn ndauhpatmei, information tiiloumei khatnic lat hy chuy thay khang karamhmei ta e. Mihei kalangv kathumh khang hypat nina e. Mi kiu,

(a) Kahouhmei (*The Introduction*),
(b) Kadwn swmei, Kapumc (*The Body*), khatnic
(c) Luailoumei (*The conclusion*).

Kahouhmei langv khou tiilou bammei latlam tei tabui cho twmei duina lyanlou khang e. **Kapumc** hei tho essay zamh kadwnmei langv the. Kalingmei, nsunh nsah lam khatnic hy bammei akhat chwn tei nthanna lyanlou khang e. Latdangv (Paragraph) baicbaicna hy nina e. Kumecho tihkic latdangv guay tei nzang chuyna khat lev khat alamvmei riang nai nina e. **Luailoumei** hei nic **Kahouhmei** tei kumc muayna duina karuc thangc hykeyloumei guay zamh nganvloumei bamv sw nina e.

Essay hei kazaat panguh khang swna khaklangcpat nuh e.

A. Descriptive Essay:

Decriptive Essay hei nsamv liangmei essay zaat re saa nuh e. Mihei ramh akhat lam twmei tho kabamv, maansei, puatc lam khou piakna hymei ta e. Latkamv khang Delhi, Bwning; Postman, Dinhmei; Khowduang, duipui duidai-mi kumhmei guay lam khou hymei essay ta e.

B. Narrative Essay:

Narrative Essay hei ramh khat zamh lam khou pary rahmei thiak khou hymei latdangv ta e. Latkamv khang Baenglaa Zaymei, Taj Mahal zauc tatmei, Zahduanang, Rani Gaidinliu- mi kumhmei lam khou hymei essay ta e.

C. Expository Essay:

Expository twmei tho 'explanation' twtuang e. Mi essay hei narrative essay tei lev nchamc maih e. Narrative essay rui how takhaanvmei puat, maansei hamhethei kabamv lam dincna hymei ta e. Expository essay rui tho scientific topic, literary topic, latchap hamhethei riakdyn, theories lam khou kalam piakna hymei ta e. Latkamv khang 'Nchamnac ta Dinhmei', 'Democracy tatmei Kandic',-mi kumhmei guay lam khou hymei essay ta e.

D. Reflective Essay:

Mihei hymei chwn tithaypatmei ta e. Latkamv khang 'nzianmei', 'nchumhmei', 'Rih', 'Panty', - mi kumhmei lam khou chwn ndauhpatna hymei essay ta e.

E. Imaginative Essay:

Mihei makumhna hymei latdangv twna saa nuh e. Mihei lungning makum khou na kasiamhthauna hymei ta e. Hybammei mei panty khou khat sihnic pat kan makmei, howlou kan makmei lwnlung ta lungning makum rui duancthau lana hymei ta e. Latkamv khang 'Ai Prime Minister Sw Khwan Ethei', 'Ai kauh samhmei nruayna sw khwan ethei',- mi kumhmei lam khou makumhna hymei essay ta e.

Essay akumhna hy nic?

(i) Tiilou bammei latbamv (topic) tei mincna kakhanh rey tho.

(ii) Ningpatmei point kaguay tei liangcliangc swna che akhat khou hypatlou tho.

(iii) Tiilou bammei *Outlines/hints* tei lev zaucna hy khitkhithpat tho. *Outlines/hints* tei hypat datna mi bangc khou tei kalam piakmei tei hykey tho.

(iv) Latkamv (example), hy lyanna dinhmei (illustration) chanahmei ningpat nic hylou tho.

(v) Kahouhmei, kapumc khatnic luailoumei langv tei nthanna pahmei rui thay ngam khang hy nina e.

22.1.0 DESCRIPTIVE ESSAY

(i) Zeihlat

[***Outlines***: Tabui cho - kadaeng haengvmei- poupeih pary- ramvruanh bamv-luailoumei]

Tabui cho- Zeihlat hei Ruangmei pouhpeih pary khou kazanc naina puiruhnac rui thaymei zeih kang akhat re. Kandihmei guay rui dinc bammei kazanc tatmei zeic akhat re. Mihei Tamenglong district, Makuay ramv Ahucthuak daeng khou nai e.

Kadaeng haengvmei- Kadaeng khou Zeihlatzaengc, Makuay, Tayzihzaengc, Bamgayzaengc,Tuangtau, Chingkhuangcluangc ramv guay nai nkuay e. Mi khouhei zeih charuk nai e - Laengmaihzeic, Napsaamzeic, Guiphuapzeic, Nrouczeic, Goulunghzeic khatnic Tungpuizeic mi guay hei e. Zeih launa guay thu ting keymakpui ganv khou dui thip e, ting ganv khou na dui chungc e. Tihkic, Laengmaihzeic, Guiphuapzeic lev Napsaamzeic hei thu dui thip mak ge, kaganv thuih dui nai e. Chakaan charaa ganv khou thu dui rau muay e. Zeihlat zaengc nkuaymei khou nngouh raukey bam e. Mihei rui dui thipkey bam e. Mi nngouh khouhei thing kazaat ntanghna thau e. Mi nwm khouhei khouringh - suc-zouc, raengh, nruay, kazaat ntanghna nai e.

Pouhpeih pary- Zeihlat hei pouhpeih pary lev kariang nai e. Asac lev Mikcharung kaney Zeihlat khou ntanh dyna nthaanh guangc ta nymna phiantucbuy lev thandibaeng laatow e. Mi phiantucbuy lev thandibaeng tei Zeihlat khou phianlou dat kan e twna pary swna nai e.

Rav Pubuan nac mpouh Khanglynlungc nthaanh daihmei swna Zeihlat khou bam e twna pouhpeih nunc pary khou nai e. Zeihlat khou naimei nthaanh ta kazanc saa mak ge, kaibangpouc kaw e. Mi na hamhna Makuay namvmei lev Zeihlat khou bammei nthaanh nunc akhiam ndiammei pary nic nai e. Kumna Zeihlat hei Ruangmei zamh chingkhiuhriak lev kariang peyna nai e.

Ramvruanh bamv- Zeihlat ta zauh khang tingkwm pum meickang meickang swna guang e. Zeihlat zauh khang guangmei nunc Zeihlat zeic khou hih tuangcna tat re. Zeihlat hei ramvruanh bamv gaymei khat swna tidaicthau nuhmei bamv khat re. Ntaw nic meic guayna mikbamv sw bam e.

Luailoumei- Ravpui ramdam khou charynmei zeihkang akhat re. Heicdi gaymei bamv tihei aniw rui machunhlou mak gethei amaan kan ni de. Kalwnlung tuang howgay chingkhiuhmei ta aniw rui kasiamh katamvna karuhloumei hei maansei aniw thouc e.

(ii) School khou Independence Day

[***Outlines***: Kahouhmei- tabui zaeng tabui ganv khou- ngaypui lwan- luailoumei]

Kahouhmei- Kaganv akhat khou aniw kandic India hei Britishmei bangc khou bamkhwan e. Kwm 1947 zamh Pukphaabw zaeng 15 nungc hei aniw kandic India hei Britishmei bangc khourui nyngthav sw khwan e. Mi tingmik tihei Independence Day twna kaw e. Mi tatei ningtowmei swna tingkwm pum kamung daicna raengcpatna ngay bam e.

Tabui zaeng tabui ganv khou - Kamung daihmei tho Red Fort, Delhi khou Prime Minister rui chuangphey zaythauna ngay e. Kabamv baihbaihmei bamv azuh khou nic mi ngai hei kandih chuangphey zaythauna ngay e. Mi ngai hei Indiamei nyngthav swmei tingmik Pukphabw 15 ta ningtowmei mung swna neihlaamei ndauhna nngay tuang e.

Ngaypui lwan- Aniw school khou nic mi ngai hei neihlaana nngay e. School building, chaeng khatnic kadaeng nkuaymei bamv guay swthan swthinghpatna kapwan karuhlou e. Nchamnac guay uniform piulouna mi ngai khangrui guang geic e. Puipu, meicsaengc meicdaihmei nunc ta nic kawlou tina guang e. Education Minister rui Ginpy swna laalou e.

Kamung tei lauthwan khuangh 8 khou kahouh the. Ginpy rui chuangphey zaythaulou the. Nchamnac asaekc rui National Anthem suanna chuangphey khourui nroukeymei mwn ta zauc bam khwan e. Baihmei nchamnac guay rui March Past tatna ginpy ta makulou khwan e. Ginpy rui Independence Day lev kariang naimei lat gaymei saalou e. India tuang theic dat lakmei nunc twmei thu Mahatma Gandhi, Pt. Nehru, Subhash Chadra Bose, Lala Lajpat Rai khatnic Chandra Shekhar Azad kaniw rui kandihmei khang katpatlou kanmei nthukmei lam guay tei dinclou e. Principal rui nic mi tingmik tuang nthukmei lam geicna dinclou khwan e. Nchamnac azuh rui lulat saa suanmei khatnic alaamhmei dwan tampatlou khwan e.

Luailoumei- Kalaan khuangh 1 key pwkhou chamvraeng tei luai the. Luaipat ni khou nchamnac guay khatnic guang bammei kaguayna kalung makna ding khwan e. Mi ganv khoutei School tuang band party rui music gaymei khuangclouna National Anthem meic guayna suan nchamc the. Katingmik nungc pat kanmei kahak tei kumc aseic nganv alung khou mi mung zamh riw gaymei tei gaanc bam di he.

22.2.0 NARRATIVE ESSAY

(i) Chaeng Tangkhynkeymei

[***Outlines:*** Kahouhmei- chaeng tangkhynkey kanmei asaekc- kalam- ryanraamei-thingc nuhmei lwan- luailoumei]

Kahouhmei- Manipur hei chingh rui nzaengc khangsuangc daic hianmei ting riumei gat nkauhmei kandic khat re. Manipur lev state baihmei guay lev tat alamv bammei NH 2 lev NH 37 hei nic chingh ramv khou tatmei rui nzaengc ramv khangsuangc hian e.

Chaeng tangkhyn keymei asaekc- Ting riu tanhmei chingh chaeng guay khou chaeng tangkhynkeymei hei kalwnlung pat katup be. Manipur zamh Imphal-Dimapur chaeng NH 2 khou ting ganv khou chaeng tangkhynkeymei hei pat raphrap be. Tihkic kwm 2004 Duiluanghbw (July) zaeng 10 khatnic 11 zamh kariumei zingbangc Phikoma khou pat kanmei chaeng tangkhynkeymei kumhmei baihmei khat pat kan mak he. Chaeng tei saengcna khatnic keyducna tangkhynkey khwan e. Thaurey khou chaeng nai e twmei sihnic lwm dat mak khe. Chaeng tei bihhuai bihbwng thuak ngguanh khwan e. Aniu nggintatmei nunc kai hanguang tangc pwlak khe twna ninglou kan e. Kabamv padeih tan rui kaanpat khwan e. Thing-mpeih mailuangh phungna nzuankey khwan e. Chaeng daeng khou naimei kai-saamh azuh baubing geic khwan e.

Kalam- Mi kumhmei chaeng tangkhynkeymei Manipur khou patbammei zamh kadai swmei lam tho thingding ngouhding dowkuakkeymei, chinghlau taancna ramv sw kasickeymei, mi kumhmei gauy heirui e. Ramh thau makmei chinghpaek hei dui rimgut tina kandih mbuaih e. Thingmaan rui pinc khamvlou khang thingbang maek tina thingmaan nic maek ge. Kumna ting ganv khou mi kumhmei chinghpaek guay hei mulay zay e, chaeng tangkhynkey e, thingbang mpeihpw naimei na sihnic mailuangh phung e. Manipur khou naimei chingh guay thu ntauh chingc hamh e, baby rock chingc raana de. Meic nunc hei thing khat gaikey lana kabwan khat lingclou lyn khang ningpat mak ge. Delhi khou 'meic khat thing khat' twna madanhmei khat nai e. Aniw bamv khou thu mi kumhmei madanhmei nic maek ge.

Ryanraamei- Chingh chaeng Phikoma khou tangkhynmei tei rui aniw khou ryanraamei azuh tiipat kan cho twmei zauc kho. Mi khouhei ryanraamei ariu kahakmei tho nggin chagaamei khatnic garileimei nunc e. Kaganv saengcna chaeng-pumh tei mphauh mak gethei tubamv zangbamv thay mec, suhmei nuhmei pat re, ting ding neih ding khou ryanraa khaeng e. Puatchei phunghmei gari guay puatchei guay nrumh maan e. Garithauc, maicthauc guang makna Petrol Pump, Kerosene Pump azuh nthaekc ge. Tingmik kaganv chaana tat mak khourui mpaeng-laam tat nimei nunc zamh train reservation amaan e.

Chaeng tangkhyn khourui ryanraamei mphang kahakmei nunc asaekc nic nai hec. Lau, nap-bi, phwnling azuh bih rui luangcliamna sw kasic khwan e. Kiruai azuh theic khwan e. Kakhw kakhingh azuh amaan khwan e. Mi bamv khoutei lungcbammei namvnac nunc saa ngammakmei ryanraa akhaengv khwan e.

Thingc nuhmei lwan- Mi kumhmei chaeng tangkhynmei hei thingh khang kachaeng maek rap mak ge. Chaeng daeng mbai nzat thingbang ntipmei zaat

lingc chuylou nina e, nnudui chaeng riat chuyna riatlou nina e, nuhkamv chaeng daeng khou chinghlau ruaic lak nina e. Mi kumhmei guay hei puiruhnac aniw rui thay chuyna thaylouna taanv sw nchamc khang kage nai e.

Luailoumei- Aniw rui thay e twmei tho kandih khou siihumei pat bammei hei maanseina rui ramh thaylou mak khourui e. Kalwnlung tuang swmei ta dinggaek ngam mak sihnic maansei rui tiipat mak khang tho sw nuh de. Chaeng tangkhynmei rui heicdi kamv ryanraa e twmei thayna aniuw thouc daihmei tei taancpat nina e.

(ii) Science Museum

[***Outlines:*** Tabui cho- kazaat baihbaihmei- tabui bui lou cho- luailoumei]

Tabui cho - Kalwnlung chaamvpeic su-zou, nruay, zei naimei kalung parik guay, thingbang nlimhbang guay khatnic maanseina zamh baansyam, baanhthaymei pautchei puatruc guay ta mbaekclouna nyngtyng-tak khang kathai kariang khang ryloumei khatnic zauhpui bamv ta Museum kaw e. Duina saa pwkhou kalwnlung khatnic maansei lev kariang naimei puatchei puatruc guay mbaekclouna kabamv chaana loubammei bamv ta Museum kaw nuh e.

Kazaat baihbaihmei - Mbaanv khou kazaat baihbaihmei museum peyna nai e. Mi kiu thu - art museum, natural history zamh museum, automobile zamh museum, industries zamh museum khatnic science zamh museum mi kumhmei guay hei e. Manipur khou nic state museum khatnic charay zamh museum guay nai e.

Tabui bui lou cho- London khou science khatnic technology daicthau saengcthau kahouhmei zamh lwanry ta kahiak nthanna lyanloumei museum akhat nai e. Mi hei kwm1909 A.D. khou kasiamh khwan e.Mi museum khou hei science tihei baanhthaymei thyam-ruai khou akumhna piuguang kan cho twmei tei nthanna lyanlou e. Latkamv swna saatow pwkhou - mi museum khouhei James Watt tuang steam engine khatnic George Stephenson tuang rocket loulyanlou e. Mi na hamhna, zawpawna bw thangc kutangc kanmei Apollo 10 zamh Command Module khatnic astronaut nunc rui paannu kanmei Space Suit lyanlou e. Mi guay hei how pwkhou lungning khou kadathdatmei pat re.

Mi hamhmei azuh nic museum khoutei nai lyanlou bam e. Che kasiamh thau reymei lwnlung khatnic baihmei chalahmei machine azuh lou chuyna lou bam e. Kaganv khat khou printing press kahouhthau reymei baansin guay khatnic

astronomy khatnic tinglaan lwnlung guay lou chuyna lou bam e. Mi na hamhna kaganv khat khou sinswlou khwanmei Navigation zamh lwnlung azuh puiruhnac khou lyanlou bam e. Mi kumhmei khouhei phaydyng sw lana aseic kanganv maekna daicthau bammei technology zamh machine azuh hei phungcpat kan tuang e twna sa nuh e.

Luailoumei- Science Museum rui nchamnac nunc khang peyna gaengmei tii e. Kaniw rui latrik khou nchambammei guay tei science museum khou kamik kahak rui how mphang e, kabaanc kahak rui sinna zauc nuh e. Mi hei rui science zamh theory khatnic practice kanei zamh gaatmei twn tei ti-nthuihlou e.Science rui maansei khang tiimei gaengmei guay tei mik hu khou nthanna tihowlou e. Mi hei rui science ncham khang lungh tithaulou e.

22.3.0 . EXPOSITORY ESSAY

(i) Zawpaw Khangrui Nchamnac Lung Tithaulou nina e

[***Outlines:*** Kahouhmei- lungh tithauloumei tabui cho- karaana lungh tithau thaymei nchamnac- lungh tithauloumei rui gaengmei- luailoumei]

Kahouhmei- Tabui zaeng nchamnac asaekc rui thaynii laanii hak, baihmei rui lunghgut mak twbam tu cho? Mihei lungh tithaulou mak khourui e twna saa nuh e. Lungh tithauloumei hei rui nchamnac guayna khang zawpauhmei bangbi kiu the.

Lungh tithaumei tabui ta cho- Taancnii karamcnii kandiu khang katiuloumei ta e. Mi na heirui biuh mak he. Nchamnac rui ramh akhat gaymei laatow guang pwkhou kata thuancna makuloumei hei kalung tithau liangmei akhat re. Kaniw rui kaswan laaguang pwkhou thuancloumei hei karaana karamh khang phaydyng gaymei akhat the. Heic zaengrui lungh tithauloumei twmei hei phaypanv gaymei di the.

Karaana lungh tithau thaymei nchamnac- Nchamnac kanei hei nchamc raph mak ge. Kamei kamei ningmei, kahawmei, lungning khatnic chwn baic ngam de. Karaana lungh tithau thaymei nchamnac akhat rui kathouc thay hian pwni, dinhmei nunc lev alamv hian pwni, puipu lev kaphianh kazanh hian pwni khatnic kata swkhamv liang bammei tabui cho twmei lwn thay khang kaganv kathuih karamc pwni. Mi khouhei kaniw ta lunghdyng laa chadaa khang kabamv tiilou nina e. Kunghmei lam ta zawpuancriu ngam khang dinclou nina e. Karaa

raana rui kasiamhmei problem lwn thay nina e. Nchamnac akhat ta tabui nungc sihnic karaana kata nuh mak khe twna siimei lungning tininglou lak nina e. Gaanvkhat tuang siimei lam nic khat sihnic tisaa lak nina e. Kaniw chwn khatnic lungning khou ramh akhat siimei duancthau khang kabamv tiilou lak nina e. Mi kumhmei nchamnac guay khou zawpaw rey kanmei maansei nunc lam rac katuplou nina e. Nang zawpawmei lam tei nic kaniw khou raclou tio, tabui cho tihkic nchamnac guay hei gaanvkhat tuang experience khourui karaa raana lung tithau nimei kabamv gay liangmei e.

Lungh tithaumei rui gaengmei- Kandih khou zawpauhmei kapwmna hei lungning khourui kahouh e. 'Ai sw mak nuh mec'twmei chwn naimei guay tei tho kapaek akhat zawpaw reymei kiu di the. Chalingcdingna taanhmei twntei taanc pwkhou ramh ngam mak tuang maek ge. Kum tina lungh tithauloumei hei zawpaw nimei bangbi the. Kaniw rui kahaw bammei lwn thaylouna lungh tithauloumei hei thei panty tuang lanv kiu di the.

Luailoumei- Lungning khou katun tancna taanhmei khangtei chaeng nsyn de. Zawpawmei ta ningna tatgutmei khang zawpawmei rui nkhwan bam e. Mi zawpawmei ta laatow khang tho lungning ti-mbeh makna nchumhmei chaeng khou lungh tithauloumei hei e. Mihei rui panty thai kiu nthai pwni e.

(ii) Ntaw Gan khou Science

[***Outlines:*** Tabui cho- science rui gaengmei khatnic amaanmei- luailoumei]

Tabui cho - Science hei ravnyngtyng, ravthyam e. Science hei maanseina khang suaihiam daihmei akhat re. Aniw ramhthay makmei chwnlung khourui patmei kiuc hamhmei nyngraeng guay ta timaanlou e. Science hei bangh guayna pangc khou gay liangmei bangc e. Mi tihei ta piu makmei maek khe. Piu chuy mak gethei tho aniw khang ramhsic hownuhmei ariu e. Mihei tho piu bammei kakaipouc rampiu khoutei nai the.

Science rui gaengmei khatnic amaanmei- Science ruii maansei panty ta tikalaiclou e. Lungcgaymei na rui amanvna lunghmei zuk tei tho tat kan the. Science rui lungcsiimei khang nic nchamc raphna meic guayna khang amanvna lungh khang kadou gaymei ti-mphanglou e. Latrik, TV, Music, gari - mi kumhmei guay hei aniw kaimun khou na phungc guanglou the.

Pumhgaylwan khou nic science rui kadam nthukna laalou e. Ravpuat azuh ta tigaylou ngam e. Reynungc tigay ngam makmei ravpuat azuh ta ravthyam

guay piuna nchiwna tigaylou ngam the. Siimei ravrik azuh ta nic swluai ngam the. Tigay ngam makmei ravpuat twmei hei ntaw ganv khou tho geih mak khe.

Ramvruanh, ginluanh phaykaamv azuh khou nic science rui kadam gaymei laalou the. Aeroplane, train, rungh khatnic gari guay hei aniw chaengtat khang kunghmei guay tei gaychalahmei tiswlou the. Nngouhlwng ta sihnic chaengdai ti-mbaihlouna ntaw tho kungh tuang maek khe. Imphal khou lauthuan chah zangvlouna Delhi tho nap tu, tingzyn London khou guangzip nuh the. Mi kumhmei bw azuh gut nimei chaengtat hei khuangh ganv katitna dak lungc khou tatlik ngam nuh the.

Kaikhunh khou nic khuangh azuh gutna taanhmei taanv guay tei mikkhip dak khourui taancluai ngam the. Nap-gan suanghmei, phey soumei, kaigeymei mi kumhmei guay hei science paanrui nchiwna taanc ngam the. Kaganv azuh zaengsw khang nai the, taanv baihmei guay taanh khang kaganv nsaamei nai the. Puipu nunc nic zaengsw khang kaganv mphang the. Nah nunc ta bam nchamc khang, ncham nchei khang kaganv geicna mphang the. Mihei rui aniw taanv nkhavmei na hamhna aniw nyngtyng nic ti-mbuthaulou the.

Kumecho tihkic science hei gaymei gaengmei tii ngammei zudou tei siimei, amaanmei nic tii ngam e. Nkauhmei baansin, thyamrav azuh kasiamhpatmei heirui maanseina khang ramhsic pat nuhmei padik nai e. Nuclear bomb, tamai khatnic meic theic nuhmei puat azuh kasiamhpat bammei hei aniw khang amaanmei e. Lunghgeihmei kiu tho mi puat guay hei neihkhat thu sinsw pwni, kumna sii-suaimei pat pwni e. Science hei maansei panty amanvna lungh khang piú tuang ethei tho mi kumhmei siimei puat guay hei kasiamhpat mak sihnic nuh e. Mi khouhei aniw rui thaylou nimei tho sauh naipui bamv khou thayna thayna kapitkey ethei tho sauh khuay hamh the kapitkey bammei maanseina khuay tei di the.

Luailoumei - Puatc akhat nai ethei kalim akhat nic key pwni. Science hei maanseina khang gaengmei padik ge. Tihkic mi kahak hei theihmei, maanmei, ramgsic pat nuhmei akhat nic swmuay e. Sicence zamh gaengmei kaguay tei kalwn thayna piu ethei kandih hei tingkauh bamvduan gaymei akhat sw pwni e.

22.4.0 . REFLECT IVE ESSAY

(i) Nzianthaymei

[Outlines: Tabui cho - Thow ta nzian khang - Nzianthaymei rui tabui gaengmei tiilou cho - Luailoumei]

Tabui cho - Ravguangc rui kalwn luicna damcloumei khouringh kataana pangc khou daic liangmei kaipat swna maanseina khang tiiloumei kaipat hei **nzianmei** hei e. Mihei maansei akhat ta lungning thangc rui kungcloumei khatnic kadanloumei chwn tei e. Nzianmei maekna maansei lungc nuh mak ge. Nzianmei hei maansei lungning, chwn khourui patpui tuang e. Maansei rui nzianmei ta piuna, sinswna lunghmei ta nzianthaymei kaw e.

Thow ta nzian khang - Maansei akhat rui nzianthaymei lwn lyanlou ni e twethei tho rey liangmei khou kapumc karaana ta nzianmei kumc kakai kaigei launingmei ta nzian nina e. Gaanvkhat rui suailou maanvloumei ta kasing chak lak nina e. Suailou-maanvlou bam pwnic kadyng khou kuaklouna guatc swna nzian kari bam nina e. Aniw ta nzianloumei na ta nzian hanlou datmei tei tho nzianmei ling hamh e. Nzianlou makmei maansei ta nzianna kadanloumei tei nziathaymei, nzian changhmei kiu e. Mbaanv maansei kataana ta nzianthay bam nina e.

Nzianmei rui tabui gaengmei tiilou cho - Nzianthaymei hei ramh kaguayna suangc nkauh liangmei maanseina gunc e. Nzianmei rui gaanvkhat ta sii khang sw zat mak ge, mamav mak ge, gaengh sw mak ge, karaana kakhang na ning tuang maek ge, kakhang amaan maih sihnic gaanvkhat khang gaeng khang swlou e. Nzianmei rui lungning khou nchu nzaenghmei khatnic neihlaamei tiilou e. Nzianmei naimei bamv khoutei chwnchamc latchamc e. Latlu geih mak ge. Kachin karo mak ge. Daicthau saengcthau e. Lungc bam gay e. Ravguangc lwnlung ndauhna neihlaana lungc e. Nzianmei maekpui bamv khou siimei rui guanghtu e.

Luailoumei - Nzian kariimei hei gay e twmei thay ngam de tihkic kalam akhat hamhethei kalam akhat khourui nzian mak khang kachaeng geicna maansei kak khou nai e. Heic zaengrui nzian kariina lunghmei twmei hei maansei aniw rui swmak nuhmakmei e. Nzianmei rui panty zamh pwanrai swna piu nina e. Mi tatei e nzianthaymei kiu.

(ii) Lungcsiimei

[***Outlines:*** Kahouhmei - lungcsiimei lam - akumhna lungcsiimei khourui duak ne - Luailoumei]

Kahouhmei **-** Lungcsiimei twmei hei san khourui na hamh e, tihkic taanc laanhloumei thai nic e. Kaikhunh lungcsiimei tho kalam khat de, tihkic kandih lungcsiimei tho taanvdaih sinmei nunc rui lungning nthanna taanh mak khourui e. Dihnac khang tii nimei dam tei tiilou mak, nzanhlou nimei tei nzanh tangclou makna kakhang kakhang na ning khourui kandihmei lungcsiina ryanraa bam tuang e.

Lungcsiimei lam **-** Kandih daihmei thaek khou saa pwkhou lungcsii bammei hei kapy kagav guay agaamv khourui e. Syandui lwan gay ku ngam makmei lam nic kadai sw e. Kandih khourui patmei kalwnlung puat ta sinpiu thay makmei nic kalam akhat re. Aniw kandic hei ramh gaat mak ge saa nuh e, tihkic nai bammei tihei gaeng nkauhmei khang sinpiu thaymak ge.

Gaanvkhat ta bacbinna lunghmei hei nic kalam akhat re. Mphangmei na rui mphang, laatowmei na rui laatowna lungc khatnic maekmei rui maek chuchu twmei lwnlung nai khourui nic e. Dihlwan khou nyngthav swmei kandic bam khwan sihnic syandui lwan khou nyngthav sw makmei kandic tei nyngthav swmei kandic kaw khang biuh mak ge.

Akumhna lungcsiimei khourui duak khang- Latthanv daihmei tho aniw hei akumh ethei lungcsiimei khourui duakna lungcgayna lungc nuh pwni cho twmei hei e. Lungcsiimei lev lungcgaymei kak khou naimei kakak hei nchiwna laaganc ngammak ge. Mihei kaganv gutna khatnic taanv ranvna taanhmei na rui laaganc ngam pwni. Mphang nimei dam tei mphang nchamc, guhsw gahswmei maekna khatkhat ta machuang karina lungc pwkhou lungcsiimei hei kuak ngam pwni.

Kaikhunh lungcsiimei hei tho syandui ntaanvpui lwan maekmei, phybamv gaymei laatow ngam makmei khatnic latrik thay makmei khourui nic pat re. Aliauh makna chalingcdingna taanc pwkhou lungcsiimei hei amaan pwni e.

Luailoumei- Lungcsii lungcgay zamh kakak hei democracy tatmei India kumhmei kandic khou tho maansei rui kasiamhpat tuang de. Lungcsiimei hei rav syang e twna na nic ning khang maek ge. Maansei panty baanhthi baanhnam de, lungcgay guai lungcsii guaina lunghmei kachav de. Latrik thayna phybamv chaamei phupat thay ethei lungcsiimei hei amaan pwni. Lungcsiimei hei rui kandih saengcthau daicthau nimei chaenglwan khou swkhamv swnamvmei akhat the. Maanseina khang daihmei howmumei kiu e.

22.5.0. IMAGINATIVE ESSAY

(i) Ai Chief Minister swethei

[***Outlines:*** Kahouhmei - Nang rui taancpat niimei - luailoumei]

Kahouhmei- Ai Manipur Chief Minister swethei Manipur chingh-nzaengc nchamcna daicthau khang karamc ni. Manipur khou gaymei kalaihmei phungcguang khang sw pwni. Mi hei kabiswmei athouc the.

Nang rui taancpat niimei- Ai rui Chief Minister swethei taangaymakna taanc nimei taanv asaekc nai e. Reymei khou latrik nchammei khou kathuk tii pwni. Manipur khou education lwan khou kalaihmei phungcguang khang sw pwni. Quality education phungcguang khang nthukna sinthau pwni. Latrik diangcna thaymei, kathouc khou lunghgutmei, kagunc naimei nunc ta dinhmei tisw pwni. Kaniw ta chakhuang champouhlou pwni. Taanv pangc khou dinhmei nunc khang bwphy daicna tii pwni. Kaniw ta chakhuang champouhlou pwni. Kalam thu dinhmei nunc hei nthei zamh dilungnac ta kasiamhmei nunc the. Namv namv khou khatnic kaidai kabamv thuih khou government school guay hei ti-kaluanthau dat lana free education hei alauc guay khang tii pwni.

Kaneimei khou, chyng-zaengc chaeng-pumh nchamcna gay khang khatnic kabamv kathuih ntwn-chakaan puatphunghmei khatnic meictuanghmei gari tat nuh khang chaeng kasiamh rey pwni. Manipur hei kadam kathumh patmei khou kadam kanei hei chinghramv e. Mi kadam kanei hei daicthaumei khou, chaeng-pumh khou, latrik thaymei khou gaat re. Kumhpui zaengrui Manipur zamh kadam kanei chyngramv khou daicthaumei taanvmung guay kadaiswna sinthau pwni. Chinghramv nsaamei guay hei puatthuak tiipat geicna syan-dui patmei lwan khou Manipur kapwm ta nkhav ngammei sw khang taanv sinthau pwni. Nngouh, thingding, mpeih-nriangcding makuatthau pwni khatnic mihei rui Manipur zamh economy khou gaeng daihmei tisw pwni.

Kathumhmei khou, Manipur chingh nzaengc lautaanhmei state re. Kumna chinghramv hei chinghlau taanhmei khangsuangc gayranvmei ramhbang linghmei farm - tangat farm, phuairiau farm, tingthaibang farm, syandui patnuhmei phwnling farm miguay hei sinthau pwni. Chinghlau khou chabaa khatnic chemical fertilizer sinswna taancpat ruaicpat geih khang sw pwni. Manipur kakwn kakuaic khou marketing facilities khatnic transport service geicna tinai pwni. Mihei rui Manipur kakwn kakuaic khatnic chyngramv khou puatthuak guay town khatnic kaidai kaithyan guay khou phungcpatna tizuanc pwni.

Manipur khou industry daicthau khang khatnic chabwan nunc taanv sw nuh khang dilungmei geicna kazauh nuhmei industry geicna lingcthau pwni. Agro-forest industry lingcthau pwni. Tourism industry daicthau khang sw pwni. Chingh khou model town geicna kasiamhthau pwni. Chingh nzaengc nchamcna kathaek khatna khou daicthau khang taanvsw pwni.

Ai Chief Minister swethei syantu duitumei swmaan pwni. Ai kahak syantu duitu ni tu hamh e. Puiruhnac zamh taanv nthanna taanc pwni. Taanv-dui taanh khang kathaek kathaek theilayna combined examination sw pwni khatnic gay liang liangmei nunc ta taanv khou laagut pwni. Mihei rui taanvgutmei khou corruption zaat guay sw amaan pwni.

State income maekna daicthau saengcthaumei taanv taanc ngammak ge. Kumhpui zaengrui government zamh tax guay khuam chuyna khuamthau pwni. Government zamh income guang nuhmei chaeng azuh sinthau pwni. Manipur hei syan-dui lam khou karaana ding ngammei tisw khang syan patmei chaeng azuh sinthau pwni khatnic mi income guay tei rui Manipur chingh-nzaengc nchamcna daicthau khang sw pwni.

Kaganv theilayna India Neihpat taanvlwan guay hei laancdaih khang sw pwni. Trans-Asian Super Highway guangmei lev Manipur daicthaumei lwan hei kaluan nchamc khang sw pwni. Indo-Myanmar Border Trade hei tigaythau khang sw pwni. Miguay hei rui Manipur khang gaengmei khatnic daicthaumei phungcguang nimei lwan khou kadow chaamei tisw pwni.

Luailoumei- Ai rui Manipur zamh Chief Minister swethei work culture tinaina meic kathuihna taanv ranvna taanhmei, taanc chuyna taanhmei state khat tisw pwni. Mihei rui puiruhnac lungning, mikzaw tikalaih khang sw pwni. Puiruhnac lungning khatnic mikzaw kalaih pwkhou Manipur kalaih pwni. Kumna Manipur khou kalaihmei phungcguang khang twmei khou ai lev puiruhnac chwn khat lungh khatna swna tatgut khang karamc pwni. Puiruhnac chwn thayna tat khang sw pwni. Puiruhnac chwn akhang nic achwn the.

(ii) Kauh Samhmei Nruayna Sw Khwan ethei

[***Outlines:*** Kahouhmei - tabui chwn phungc cho - maansei khang tabui gaengmei swlou cho - tabui sw ne - lwanlou nuhmei - luailoumei]

Kahouhmei **-** Nruayna hei neihlaamei rui padikmei Ravguangc baansiam akhat re. Kaniw khou chwnsii zaengsiimei howmak ge. Kaniw panty saanvsaengh tukhang zangvkhang lunghgeih makna amanvna ringc e.

Tabui chwn phungc cho - Kauh samhmei nruayna guay rui tabui chwn phungc bam cho twmei tho thaytangc ngammak ge. Kum khwansihnic kaniw thiak khoutei how e twmei thu kaniw guay hei lungh ryanraamei maek ge, kapmei maek ge tihkic neihlaa amanvna ringhmei rui kadwan sw e. Lungh ryanraa, zaengsii bammei maanseina ta swmlou bammei khwan rui padik ge.

Maansei khang tabui gaengmei swlou cho - Kauh samhmei nruayna guay hei maansei rui taanc ngam lakmei azuh taancpatlou e. Ramhthw akhat puanc lana kabamv akhat khou lingckeylou e. Mitei rui kabwan kabang gaythauna maansei khang gaengmei azuh tiilou e. Kakwm kaganv azuh khou maansei khang sii nimei rik azuh ta swluai swtiatlou e.

Tabui sw nic - Ai kauh samhmei nruayna sw tuang khwanethei maanseina guay khang kauh thu rui phaengckeyna neihlaa zaenggaymei suaihiam bunkeylou ni tuang e. Kabamv gaygaymei khou samcruan tatna nchu nzaenghmei chamv hei maanseina khang tingmik pwm phungcguanglou nii e. Kapmei, zaengsiimei rui padikna bammei mbaanv khou mi guay tei laaduaklou khang kauh thangc samckuna Ravguangc khou zaenghuay tat ni e. Lungh bakna bammei maansei guayna khang tingkauh lu gaymei suanlouna kaniw ta swmlou ni e. Maansei swna puanclou tuang tho kauh samhmei nruayna bamv laana taancpat thuy mak ge. Adih mamav cho kaniw panty lwnlung tei! Neihkhat na sihnic swlou nii e kauh samhmei nruayna swna samcna neihlaana lunghmei panty tei!

Lwanlou nuhmei - Nruayna ramhthaymakmei de twna maansei rui ning e tihkic kaniw lwnlung tei maanseina rui lwanlou nuhmei, ncham nuhmei peyna nai e. Kaniw lat maek ge tihkic chwnchamc latchamcna ringc e. Kabou ta amuclou mak ge. Nthyam kanmei nruay sw sihnic kamei bamlou nimei bamv kaboutei tho maanseina khang suangc kasiamh chuyna ringc e. Tingsei, lailum, chakaan ganv thayna ringc e. Alingh e, aliauhmei maek ge. Kanac guay ta makuat chuylou e. Kanac guay ndaapc tariimei ganv thayna nluatclou e. Katuang howmumei lwn thay e. Tingriu neihsuc bam pwnic kanac guay ta kabamv gaymei khou louna phaengzaulou e. Mi guay hei maansei aniw rui lwanlou nuhmei e. Heicdi nthyam kanmei khouringc rui maansei suangc mbuna kanac ta kadanloumei charyn e Ravguangc ramdam!

Luailoumei - Kauh samhmei nruayna guay hei adih panty amanvna lungc kan tu cho! Neihlaamei lu raana suanna zingbangc kalaan maansei khang kwmganv kalaic guangmei tithaylou e. Kaniw kandic kiu howtangc thaytangh mak sihnic kauh samhmei nruayna kiu swlou zauc nii dyng e. Mihei Ravguangc charynmeipu ramdam kiu e.

KATHAIDWAN

Kabangc khou tiilou bammei latbamv guay hei latkaeng 200 dou khou essay hy o.

i) Aniu tuang School Library

ii) Ai rui kahaw liangmei dinhmei

iii) Panty khou neihlaa liangmei tingmik

iv) Zipri thuymakmei zingbangc

v) Apanty khou tamhmei

vi) Nchamnac khatnic dihlwan

vii) Maansei khatnic thingbang

viii) Haengvmei mphuam guangmei

ix) Ai Guangh sw tuang khwanethei

x) Rani Gaidinliu

xi) Kahuymei tauc paantamv towmak ge.

xii) Tunac gaymei ta khanlou khang nai e.

xiii) Aniw kandic khou nwmtatmei swmaan kho twethei

xiv) Kalwn gaymei tunac

xv) Nchu nzaenghmei

23.0 LECTURE, CHAMVCHE HAMHETHEI MEGAZINE KHOU NDAUH NIMEI

Mi hei essay hymei lev nchamc de. Kum e cho tihkic kathiak taleina baihmei nai e. Tukumhna hy ni cho twmei kabangc khou tiilou bammei hei thay rey kho.

(a) Latbamv akhat tiiloumei lam tei thay rey khang karamc tho. Latbamv tei hypatlou dat ro.

(b) Outlines hamhethei hints tiilou nuh e. Tiilou ethei mi thei tei layna hy tho. Tiilou mak puh nic essay hymei kumc idea kalangv kalangv latdangv baicbaicna nzangvna hy khang e.

(c) Kahouhmei, kapumc khatnic luailoumei langv tei thayna hy o.

(d) Hy kahouh mak khou hamhethei hy luai pwkhou hymei zanc lev kabamv zanc hylou nina e.

(e) Tiiloumei latkaeng sing tei piu chuyna hy khang e.

23.1.0 Kabangc khou hylou bammei model hei zauc kho:

(a) Kasangay Gwanmei hei Dinhmei akhat re. Chabwan nunc kariumei mung akhat khou kamei 'Cinema rui Chabwan nunc khang gaymei khatnic siimei' twmei lam khou lat saa pwni e. Mi lat tei latkaeng 230-250 dou khou hypat ro.

[***Hints***: Tabui cho- gaymei khatnic siimei- gay nuhpui lwan- luailoumei]

Cinema rui Chabwan nunckhang Gaymei khatnic Siimei

Kasangay Gwanmei
Lecturer,
Tengkonjang Hr.Sec. School, Luangmai

Aseic mi mung khou guangtangclou bammei chakhuang lwn phunghmei meicpy-meicgav khatnic ntak-tyngmei chabwan guay. Cinema rui chabwan nunc khang tabuibui tiilou cho twmei lam khou duina saalou nii e, nkingkey cham kho.

Tabui cho - Mihei ntaw zuk khou laamlu (entertainment) daic liangmei khat the. Cinema zauh makmei maansei maek khe. India khou khatnic kandih kabamv kathuih khou nchiwna laatow nuhmei ramgai kiu cinema hei nic akhat the. Mihei ahuanghna khatnic nchiwna mphang raph tina meic guay nchamc raphna zauc nuh ngam e. Maansei panty lam khou nic geicna lyanlou e. Heic zaengrui cinema rui panty lam khou puiruhnac ta nchamlou nuh e. Cinema hei chabwan nunc rui zauc mbu e. Kaniw rui kahawna zauclou kanmei lwn, thiak khatnic pwanrai tei kaniw lung khou rimlou e.

Gaymei khatnic siimei- Maansei nchamc ndaw saapat ngam makmei tei cinema khourui saa bammei chu e, how e khatnic thay e. Mi rui dinhmei tho cinema hei panty kasiamh khang gaymei laamlu akhat re twna saanii tuang e. Cinema tihei baeng lev saa kidaalou e tabui cho tihkic baeng hei meic theic nimei ta operation swna tiringclou ngam e khatnic meicdowmei baeng nic sw nuh e. Mihei rui charuangc zamh siimei ravpuat ta tigay ngammei baeng sw nina e. Cinema rui aniw tuang kamanv kunghmei chingkhiuh chapriak pwanrai, tatnahlwan, laamlu nchamlou e. Kahunungc kandihmei khang kapanty katpatlou kanmei panty lwanry guay nic cinema khou lyanlou e. Kaling kaling tei maansei charuangc khou ndauhpatlou e. Mi gaymei guay lwn thayna chabwan guay rui layluaihmei kage nai e.

Zaengsiimei kiu tho cinema kasiamhmei guay rui maansei kheyliak swphuamlouna syan taanvpui lwan na ningmei naimei hei the. Latrik thay makmei khatnic nyngtyng raupui mei nunc ta tilwm nuh khang kaling hamhmei, mik na rui zauclou nuh khang geicna kasiamhpat re. Kaniw laamlu nic meicguatpui thiak rui padik the. Nthah boulahpui tuang nic padik the. Miguay rui chabwan kheyliak sw kasickey bam tu the.

Gay nuhpui lwan- Cinema guay hei charuangc khou ndauhpat mak khou Board of Certification rui mincna kathai reylou khang kage nai e. Tanhmei riakdyn akhatnic kasiamhlou khang kage nai e. Cinema kasiamhmei guay nic syan ntaanvpui lwan khang na hamhna charuangc kasiamhmei khou lmikzaw louna cinema hei taancpat khang kage nai e. Nkauhmei hyangryan tei kutangh khang karamc nina e. Nuhpui kamv chabwan nunc rui layluaih tina sii nimei thiak guay tei tikazauhlou lak nina e. Kum pwkhou na rui cinema hei latrik nchampui lwan khang khatnic kheyliak kasiamhthau khang kagunc naimei baansin sw ngam pwni e.

Luailoumei- Cinema taancpatmei guay rui miknac zowna taanc bam sihnic charuangc rui laalou nuh makmei tho ndauhpat makmei rui gay hian e. Zauhmei guay rui nic gaymei lev siimei lwn thayna zauhmei gay e. Gaymei guay ta layluaihlou, siimei guay ta gancpat thaymei hei kage nai e. Kumethei taanc bammei khatnic zauc bammei guay khang gaeng pwni e.

(b) Kaiphundai Youth Club tuang Education Secretary Pouh Neihlaalung Gaengmei rui kailuang tuang nchamnac nunc khang kaswan nzanhpatmei mung akhat khou 'Latrik thaymei- ntaw ganv khou kage nai liangmei' twmei lam khou lat saa pwni e. Tiilou bammei hints ta zauc lana mi lat kiu hypat ro.

[***Hints:*** Latrik thaymei rui gaengmei- Latrik thaymei khatnic Democracy- Aniw kandic khang kage nai liangmei nyngtyng- ntumei latrik thaymei- luailoumei]

Latrik Thaymei - Ntaw Ganv khou Kage Nai Liangmei

Pouh Neihlaalung Gaengmei,
Secretary(Education),
Kaiphundai Youth Club

Aram Kaiphundai Youth Club rui chamvraenglou bammei kaswan nzanhpatmei mung khou guang tangclou bammei namvpui namvpu, gaanvsuh gaanvthauh, church tuang kapy guay, phwam phwam zamh kapy kagav, kailuangcnac khatnic zawpauh guangmei nchamnac guay kapwmna ta pybumkeyna chakhuang swmei ndauh e. Ntaw ganv khou kage nai liangmei hei latrik thaymei twmei hei di the twmei meic guayna rui thay e. Mi lam khou duina nkingkey nchamc kho.

Latrik thaymei rui gaengmei - Latrik thaymei rui gaengmei hei 'heic phauh the' twmei maek ge. Mihei pumh gay khang, nyngtyng mbuku khang, kheyliak gay khang khatnic bumaengh lam khou daicthau khang tiangdaic akhat sw e. Khouringh guay khourui baic taph bammei maanseina hei latrik thaymei paanrui e. Panty ricbamv khou latrik thaymei rui adow ngam pwni e. Mihei rui panty neihlaa amanvna lungh khang, panty kabac thay khang swlou e.

Latrik thaymei khatnic Democracy - Puiruhnac rui dihlwan kasiamhmei ta democracy kaw e. Mi kabac tho nchumhmei diclwan ta kapah khang dihnac guay thouc swmei twmei hei e. Dihnac guay rui latrik thaymak gethei nchumhmei diclwan phungcguang ngam lak ge. Kum pwkhou kandih hei ryanraa zinghmei khou keylou pwni e.

Aniw kandic khou kage naimei nyngtyng- Aniw zaat khatnic aniw kandic hei ramh peyna kage nai bam di he. Taektw, pheybaan, pucraengc gaymei, kailau taanhmei, industries - mi kumhmei guay hei kage geicna nai e. Miguay ruc khou kage nai liangmei kiu tho latrik thaymei hei e. Kazaeng tho latrik thaymei rui scientist, doctor, engineer, dinhmei- zaatc kasiamhthau biumei maansei azuh kasiamhlou e. Kalam akhat khou thay nthukmei nyngtyng naimei hei latrik thaymei paanrui e. Aniw kandic khou kalwnlung khourui patmei ramhguayna tihei gay nkauhthauna sinpiu nimei hei latrik thaymei paanrui e. Thauh, dui, thing, puc-raengc heiczumei ta sinpiu khang kage daicna nai e. Mihei aniw latrik thay mak khourui gindicmei maansei guay rui guang sinpiu bam e.

Ntumei latrik thaymei- Aniw zaat hei ntumei ta howkey e. Ntumei khang kabamv tiilou rau e. Khitkhithna ntaw ganv khou tho mi chwn tei ganckey kahouh the. Ntumei ta latrik tithayloumei hei taangay makmei akhat sw nina e. Kaniw nic kaniw panty lungcdyng laana ringc nimei maansei de. Kaniw panty ricbamv khou adow chuyna rihngam pwkhou kandih hei gaythau khang de. Kaniw ta nic kaniw rui tamhmei tei laatowna panty kabac ringcpat khang kachaeng kasiamhlou nina de. Ntu nggaanv nchamcna gay pwkhou maansei charuangc gaythau khang de.

Luailoumei - Tingkwm, zuk azuh tat kan the. Latrik thay mak nuh mak ge twmei chwnlung ningpatmei tho tingsaengh mak he. Ramhthay makna ninglaanhna bammei duibuk khourui kaanpat nina the. Gay nkauhmei biak zaucna latrik thay khang meicguayna karamc di kho.

(c) Kaboudic Phaucmei rui Manipur khou Electric mai amit katup langvna ramh khatsihnic kaganv chaana taancpat ngam mak khe twna ning e. Chamvche khou mi lam hei hypat khang kalung dinglou the. Mi article kiu kabangc khou tiilou bammei hints theilayna latkaeng 230-250 dou khou hypat ro.

[***Hints:*** Kahouhmei- Tabui sw tina mai amit bam to- guang tangh makmei- syandui lwan khou kabiumei- gay nuhpui lwan- luailoumei]

Manipur khou Electric Mai mit katupmei ramrianraa

Kaboudic Phaucmei

Kahouhmei- Electric mai sungcpat bammei power station guay rui puiruhnac khang biuhmei ryan khou nzanh ngammak khe. Kumhpui zaengrui mi khou taanc bammei guay rui kabamv khat khou mai tiilou ethei kabamv khat khou swmit, kabamv khat khou swmit rethei kabamv khat khang tiilou lyndat twnamihei tatnahmei swbam e. Loktak Power Station rui Manipur khou tho mai sungcpatmei bamv daic liangmei e. Kum khwan sihnic mi na hei rui biuh mak khe. Heic zaengrui Manipur khou mai mit katup bam tu the twmei thay e.

Tabui sw tina amit bam to - Nthukmei lam tho sungcpat bammei khang suangc piu nimei rui geic mbu taphtap tina e. Latkamv khang, piu nimei khang 80 MW kage nai tihkic nzanhpat ngammei tho kadyng khou 30 sihnic tanghmak twtina e. Mi lungc khou sihnic kabamv akhat khang tii, kabamv akhat khang tiimak twna piu the. Mbuna, transformer hamhethei mai riang kasic bam pwkhou taanclou nimei guay rui taanclou mak khourui nic mai mit bam tu e. Miguay rui 'load shedding' hei Manipur khou tho kachav kumc tat bam tuang e.

Guangtangh makmei- Mai amitmei rui maanseina khang ryanraamei tii e. Kaikhunh guay zawzingc e. Zinghmei rui namv namv hamhethei kabamv kathuih khou gum liam e. Chaengluang guay nic zingc tina ramhsic ariu nuhmei rui padik ge. Chaenghmei ganv khou maihun (fan) maek khe, tingsikmei ganv khou heater piu nuh mak khe. Zinghmei rui tiryanraamei na hamhna nchamnac guay nic latrik pac nuh mak khe. Taanv azuh mai maekmei rui kalam swna nthaekc the.

Syandui lwan khou kabiumei- Mai amitmei rui syandui lwan khou nic charynna kabiu e. Mai mit raph pwkhou industry guay nthaekc the. Mai lev kariang naina taanhmei taanv guay nic nthaekc the. Mihei rui maansei nai bam sihnic nuh makpui ganv ariu the. Mai mitmei khourui amaan kanmei syan hei chak dat ngam mak khe. Neihkhat zaengphy phicna tu bammei guay khang nic mai mit pwkhou taraina makna kabiu the.

Gay nuhpui lwan- Kachaeng baihmei maek ge, biuh khang mai sungcpatmei hamhna. Aniw kandic khou tho dui khourui laapatmei mai hamhna baihmei maekpui zaengrui dui maek gethei baihmei thiak maek khe. Government rui kathiak baihmei phupatna mai hei kage naimei chaengc khou piu nuh khang kaphianhlou khangkage daicna nai the. Mbuna electricity department khou

bammei guay rui kasicmei, gay makmei lwn thayna kaganv chaana kasiamh chuylou khang sw nina e.

Luailoumei- Kandih akhat tuang saengcthau daicthaumei hei mai-dui gaymei rui lyan e. Mikhou ngangvlou e. Mai maekna daicthaumei taanv taanc nuhmak ge. Heic zaengrui mai hei kage naimei ryan khoutei mphang ngam khang government rui lunghgutna swlou nina e. Kum pwkhou na rui Manipur aniw kandic hei meic thei lay tangc ngammei kandic sw pwni e.

(d) Khangsinlung Hr. Sec. School, Khoupum khou kumei Luh Howgaylu Gaengmei rui Ruangmei nac nunc meicsaengc meicdaihmei chaapat rau bammei lam makumh e. Katuang school megazine khou kachwn ndauhpatlou nii khwan e. Kabangc khou tiiloumei hints theilayna Howgayliu hyniina makumh bammei article kiu hypat ro.

[***Hints:*** Ruangmei zaat- Latrik nchammei lwan khou- chaeng-pumh lwan khou-suai bammei- gay nuhmei lwan- luailoumei]

Ruangmei nunc Meicdaihmei Rau bammei Lam - Duimei chwn

- Howgaylu Gaengmei

Ruangmei zaat - Ruangmei zaat hei kalaam kalu gaymei khatnic geihmei zaat re. Kachap kariak bangc khou amanvna lunghmei zaat akhat re. Kapwan karai gay e, kandihmei rui 'Ruangmei pwanrai chingkhiuh e' twna saanah e. Kumecho tihkic tho katwn patmei rau e. Chakhuang champouh lwan khou meickai suangc nkauh mak ge. Puipu ta chakhuang swmei rau e. Gaanvsuh gaanvthauh ta champouhthaymei rau e. Kalungning nsamvna meickai naplai ganlai gut laa tu khang kungh mak ge.

Latrik nchampui lwan khou - Kailuangc khou chabwan panty chakin gay, kamung karuang taek makna raengcpat bammei zaat timei tho meic ramcmei tabui sw bam cho twmei thay makna Ruangmei nac nunc hei katuang 'comfort zone' khourui tatpat nii mak ge. Kailuangc panty amanvna lungc timei tho ryanraana latrik nchamtat nii mak ge. Latrik nchammei tho lau aliauhmei nunc taanv de twmei reynungc chwn tei aseicdou puipu nunc khourui amaankey kan khwan sihnic lungcsii ryanraamei rui kadaiswna kanac nunc ta latrik ncham khang mpaeng nlaam ndiulou khang kunghmei azuh nai e. Kalam thu aseicdou

latrik nchammei hei syan-dui mpeyna gut re. Thowkumhmei pui-pu tho syandui naibam sihnic nah nunc ta latrik ncham khang lunghlou makmei nai e. Pui-pu asaekc tho kanac aluh nunc panty kasiamh khang kadan mak ge tihkic kaibangc taanv nkhav bam ethei heickiu di the twna ning bammei pui-pu nic nai he. Kumtina Ruangmei zaat hei latrik nyngtyng lam khou meicthei laytangh makmei lwan mpeyna nai e. Kumna meicsaengc meicdaihmei lwn nic howrau bam tuang e.

Kumetihkic mi kumhmei nrummei lungning khoutei rui ntaw ganv tho kaamckaanpat kahouh the. Ntumei guay ta nganv latrik ti-nchamthau the. Kaibangc taanv taanh khang katiu bammei khoutei rui latrik nchamna kaphybamv gaymei laatow nuh khang katiuthau the. Ntaw tho puiruhnac latrik nchammei phaykaamv khou kaamcgut bam the. Ntu nggaanv khaklangc dat mak khe.

Chaengpumh lwan - Ruangmei hei chingh lunghmei zaat re. Ntayzaengc khou lunghmei nic asaekc nai e tihkic minunc hei tho kalaic khat di the. Kaganv thuih chaeng-pumh hei sii e. Taancpatmei taanvthai zuancloupui bamv maek ge. Gari tat alamvna tatlou tangc nuangc ngammak ge. Ntwn guang ethei sii ranv the. Mihei rui syandui lwan khou nic kabiu e. Kabiu timei rui nah guay ta latrik ti-ncham khang kachaeng gaymei phupat khang maek khe.

Suai bammei- Aniw zaat khou meicsaengc meicdaihmei how rau bammei hei tabui sw tina cho? Mihei kalam akhatna hamh e, kalam peyna kariu e. Reymei khou, puipu guay latrik thaymei ramgai mbap makmei geic e. Kumtina kanac nunc ta nic latrik ti-ncham khang lungh loumak ge. Kaneimei khou, lungcsiimei rui latrik ncham nimei ta swkhamv swnamv e. Nah nunc ta school gaymei khou tikulou ngam mak ge. Tikulou nangc tinic kaphy kadam tiichuylou ngam mec. Heic zaengrui latrik ncham nsuangh ncham taanmei geicna nai e. Kathumhmei khou, kailuangc khou charuangc kariu gay langv khourui nchamnac guay latrik pah khang lungh loumak ge. Akhiammei chwn rau e. Kaho kadiauna maengtatmei khou lungh lou e. Mihei rui latpiu makmei nac nunc nic geicna chaapat re. Chalingc dingna taanhmei rau the. Padeihmei khou, exam ganv khou aniw kandic khouhei kariak nchumhna thahmei rau e. Pass sw nuh khang na ningna 'mass copying' hei gaychaengc swna tatkey bam di he. Mihei aniw nyngtyng nimei ta swluai bammei daic liangmei akhat the. Nyngtyng maekmei rui meicdaihmei tho tabui nungc sihnic swtow ngam lak ge. Miguay zaengrui Ruangmei nac guay hei meicdaihmei chaapat rau bam tuang e twna ning e.

Gay nuhmei lwan - Gay nuhmei lam geicna nai e tihkic kalam kanei kathumhna saatowlou nii e. Ntaw ganv khou latrik nchammei hamhna ramhbaih

chaengbaih mak ge twmei hei meicguayna chwn khou nai nina e. Latrik ncham khang puiruhnac kaamcthau nina di the. Baibal, lubuk pacpat thay ethei luai the twmei lat tei saa nthaekna nkauhmei hyangryan khou kaamcku tangc ngam khang nzaekcthau nina di the. Latrik nchammei nac guay rui latrik nchammei lwan khou tabui rui swkhamv daic liangmei cho twmei lwn thaypat nina the. Aniw raaraana rui tho swkhamv dat lak nina di the. Ryanraa makna amanv niimei chwn tei katumcna gancpat nina the.

Luailoumei - Kandih gay kho sii kho ntaw latrik ncham bammei nac nunc baanc khou nai the. Minunc hei aniw zaat tuang kapy guay kiu the. Kaniw ta nchumhmei chaeng khou titat khang dinclou kho, katiulou kho. Aniw zaat hei meic rui lwanlou nuhmei, meicsaengc meicdaihmei rui padikmei, ravchap ravriak khou ntak ntyngmei naimei zaat swna Ravguangc hym lungc ndauhmei zaat sw diu tho.

KATHAIDWAN

Kabangc khou tiiloumei guayna hei taanc o:

1. Gaykauhlungc Daenghmei hei School akhat zamh Head Master re. School Assembly khou 'Mobile Phone khatnic Nchamnac' twmei lam khou lecture tii pwni e. Mi lecture tei akumhna saa pwni cho twmei nang raana makumhna hypat ro.
2. 'Nchamnac khatnic Puc piu laanhmei' twmei lam khou Neihlaabi Gaengmei rui lat saa pwni e. Mi lat tei nang raana makumhna kabangc khou tiilou bammei hints theilayna hypat ro.

   [***Hints:*** Tabui cho - akumhtina piu laanh tuang - piu laanhmei zamh siimei - gay nuhpui lwan - luailoumei]
3. Manipur AIDS Control Society (MACS) zamh staff Karymgay Kaamhmei rui Tamenglong District khou mi ravpuat lam kathai tat khwan e. Kamei rui meicpingmei ravpuat hei tabui zaengrui naengvpat bam tu cho, akumhna swmaan kho cho, maansei guay khou tabui lat saalou tithei gay ni cho twmei tei article akhat chamvche akhat khou hy e. Mi article kiu nang raana makumhna hypat ro.
4. 'Haengvmei Mphuammei' twmei lam khou Thuancchuyliu Daenghmei rui Chamvche akhat khou article hy e. Kabangc khou tiilou bammei hints ta zauc lana hypat ro.

[***Hints:*** Tabui cho - mphuam guangmei lam - mphuammei rui siimei - gay nuhpui lwan - luailoumei]

5. Howreyliu Paammei rui 'Aniw Kandic khou Zeimu Zeihaeng Key bammei-kalam khatnic akumh ethei ti-nthaek key kho cho' twmei lam khou Ruangmei Naga Council zamh meeting khou lat saa pwni e. Mi lat kiu nang raana makumhna hy chuyna hypat ro.

6. Tamenglong District hei ramvruanh bamv (Tourist Spot) geicna nai e tihkic mihei daicthau ngammak bammei lam Saachuy Paanvmei, Lecturer, Tamenglong College rui College Magazine khou article gaymei akhat hy khang ning e. Mi article kiu hypat ro.

ISBN 978-81-931324-0-1

Printed at: BCPW, Lamphelpat, Imphal